# THETIS User Manual

Revision 1.1

Edited by Laurence Barker G8NJJ on behalf of the HPSDR Project

# **Table of Contents**

| С  | on | te | nt  | S |
|----|----|----|-----|---|
| U. |    | cc | IIC |   |

| 1 | Intro | oduction7              |                                     |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|----|--|--|--|--|--|
|   | 1.1   | History                |                                     |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 1.2   | Purp                   | oose and Structure of this Document | 8  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 1.3   | Writing Style          |                                     |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 1.4   | Alternatives to THETIS |                                     |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 1.5   | Ackr                   | nowledgements                       | 9  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | THE   | TIS O                  | verview1                            | 0  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.1   | Scre                   | en Layout - Expanded view1          | 0  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.2   | Scre                   | en Layout - Collapsed view1         | 0  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.2.2 | Classic1               | 0                                   |    |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.2.2 | 2                      | Andromeda view                      | 1  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.3   | Char                   | nging Appearance with "Skins"1      | 2  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.4   | Sign                   | al Processing Chain1                | 2  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.4.2 | 1                      | RX Block diagram1                   | 2  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 2.4.2 | 2                      | TX Audio Block Diagram1             | 4  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Insta | alling                 | & Using THETIS1                     | 17 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.1   | Insta                  | alling for the First Time           | 17 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.2   | Gett                   | ing Started with THETIS2            | 21 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.3   | Sele                   | cting & Tuning Antennas2            | 21 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.3.1 |                        | Selecting Antennas for each Band2   | 21 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.3.2 | 2                      | Antenna Tuning                      | 22 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.4   | Voic                   | e Mode Operation2                   | 22 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.4.2 | 1                      | Receiving Voice                     | 22 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.4.2 | 2                      | Voice TX                            | 23 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.5   | CW                     | operation2                          | 24 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.5.2 | 1                      | Connecting a Key                    | 24 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.5.2 | 2                      | Receiving CW                        | 24 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.5.3 | 3                      | Transmitting CW                     | 25 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.5.4 |                        | QSK                                 | 25 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.6   | Digit                  | al Mode Operation                   | 27 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.6.2 | 1                      | Setting up Virtual Audio in THETIS  | 28 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.6.2 | 2                      | Setting Up WSJT-X                   | 29 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.7   | Usin                   | g PC Audio Connections              | 31 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.8   | TX P                   | ower Calibration                    | 32 |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | 3.9   | Usin                   | g Puresignal                        | 33 |  |  |  |  |  |

| 3.9.2       Operating with Puresignal       35         4       Console Controls       36         4.1       Console Screen Buttons       36         4.1.1       Master Buttons Group       36         4.1.2       VFO Group       36         4.1.3       Band Group       36         4.1.4       Mode Group       38         4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       MultiRxet Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       52         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5.4       Equaliser Form       56   |   | 3.9.3             | 1      | Setting Up Puresignal        | . 33 |
|---|---|-------------------|--------|------------------------------|------|
| 4         Console Controls         36           4.1         Console Screen Buttons         36           4.1.1         Master Buttons Group         36           4.1.2         VFO Group         36           4.1.3         Band Group         38           4.1.4         Mode Group         39           4.1.5         Filter Group         40           4.1.6         Gain Group         41           4.1.7         VFO Buttons Group         42           4.1.8         RX1 DSP Group         42           4.1.9         MultiRX Group         43           4.1.10         Mode Dependent Group         43           4.1.11         RX2 Group         44           4.1.12         PC Audio Group         46           4.1.13         Display Group         47           4.1.14         Multimeter Group         50           4.1.15         Status Bar         51           4.2         Main Menu commands         51           4.3         Andromeda Menu Bar         52           4.4         Keyboard and Mouse Actions         52           5         Other Forms         54           5.1         Bandstacks         <             |   | 3.9.2             | 2      | Operating with Puresignal    | . 35 |
| 4.1       Console Screen Buttons       36         4.1.1       Master Buttons Group       36         4.1.2       VFO Group       36         4.1.3       Band Group       38         4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       47         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       47         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         5.5       Transverters       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54   | 4 | Con               | sole ( | Controls                     | .36  |
| 4.1.1       Master Buttons Group       36         4.1.2       VFO Group       36         4.1.3       Band Group       38         4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       MultiRX Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Form       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3 <td></td> <td>4.1</td> <td>Con</td> <td>sole Screen Buttons</td> <td>.36</td>                    |   | 4.1               | Con    | sole Screen Buttons          | .36  |
| 4.1.2       VFO Group       36         4.1.3       Band Group       38         4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       43         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       MultiRX Group       47         4.1.14       Multineter Group       50         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multineter Group       51         4.1       Multineter Group       50         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multineter Group       51         4.1.13       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.1       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         5.5       Database Reset       53   |   | 4.1.              | 1      | Master Buttons Group         | .36  |
| 4.1.3       Band Group       38         4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       47         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.4       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54      <   |   | 4.1.2             | 2      | VFO Group                    | .36  |
| 4.1.4       Mode Group       39         4.1.5       Filter Group       40         4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.4       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.4       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.13       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.14       Multimeter Group  |   | 4.1.              | 3      | Band Group                   | . 38 |
| 4.1.5       Filter Group  |   | 4.1.4             | 4      | Mode Group                   | . 39 |
| 4.1.6       Gain Group       41         4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       Soptting form       58         5.9  |   | 4.1.              | 5      | Filter Group                 | .40  |
| 4.1.7       VFO Buttons Group       42         4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.1   |   | 4.1.              | 6      | Gain Group                   | .41  |
| 4.1.8       RX1 DSP Group       42         4.1.9       MultiRX Group       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Advanced Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60   |   | 4.1.              | 7      | VFO Buttons Group            | .42  |
| 4.1.9       MultiRX Group.       43         4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group.       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group.       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group.       46         4.1.13       Display Group.       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group.       50         4.1.15       Status Bar.       51         4.2       Main Menu commands.       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions.       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms.       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transwitters       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60 <td></td> <td>4.1.3</td> <td>8</td> <td>RX1 DSP Group</td> <td>.42</td> |   | 4.1.3             | 8      | RX1 DSP Group                | .42  |
| 4.1.10       Mode Dependent Group       43         4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transwerters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60   |   | 4.1.9             | Э      | MultiRX Group                | .43  |
| 4.1.11       RX2 Group       46         4.1.12       PC Audio Group       46         4.1.13       Display Group       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transwetters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62 </td <td></td> <td>4.1.</td> <td>10</td> <td>Mode Dependent Group</td> <td>.43</td>     |   | 4.1.              | 10     | Mode Dependent Group         | .43  |
| 4.1.12       PC Audio Group.       46         4.1.13       Display Group.       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group.       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands.       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit.       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62  |   | 4.1.              | 11     | RX2 Group                    | .46  |
| 4.1.13       Display Group.       47         4.1.14       Multimeter Group.       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.1       Wideband display       60  |   | 4.1.              | 12     | PC Audio Group               | .46  |
| 4.1.14       Multimeter Group       50         4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Advanced Control       50         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Wideband display       62   |   | 4.1.13 Display Gr |        | Display Group                | .47  |
| 4.1.15       Status Bar       51         4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transwetters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.1       Wireband display       60   |   | 4.1.14<br>4.1.15  |        | Multimeter Group             | . 50 |
| 4.2       Main Menu commands       51         4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62  |   |                   |        | Status Bar                   | .51  |
| 4.3       Andromeda Menu Bar       52         4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62  |   | 4.2               | Mai    | n Menu commands              | .51  |
| 4.4       Keyboard and Mouse Actions       52         4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62  |   | 4.3               | And    | romeda Menu Bar              | . 52 |
| 4.5       Database Reset       53         5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60   |   | 4.4               | Keyl   | poard and Mouse Actions      | . 52 |
| 5       Other Forms       54         5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62   |   | 4.5               | Data   | abase Reset                  | .53  |
| 5.1       Bandstacks       54         5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy.       60         5.11       Wideband display.       62   | 5 | Oth               | er Fo  | rms                          | .54  |
| 5.2       Memory Form       54         5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy.       60         5.11       Wideband display.       62   |   | 5.1               | Ban    | dstacks                      | .54  |
| 5.3       Audio Record/Replay       55         5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display.       62   |   | 5.2               | Mer    | nory Form                    | .54  |
| 5.4       Equaliser Form       56         5.5       Transverters       56         5.6       CW Transmit       57         5.7       Diversity       57         5.8       DX Spotting form       58         5.9       Puresignal       59         5.9.1       Puresignal Control       59         5.9.2       Puresignal Advanced Control       60         5.9.3       Puresignal Amplitude Display       60         5.10       Radio Astronomy       60         5.11       Wideband display       62   |   | 5.3               | Aud    | io Record/Replay             | .55  |
| 5.5Transverters565.6CW Transmit575.7Diversity575.8DX Spotting form585.9Puresignal595.9.1Puresignal Control595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62  |   | 5.4               | Equa   | aliser Form                  | .56  |
| 5.6CW Transmit.575.7Diversity575.8DX Spotting form585.9Puresignal595.9.1Puresignal Control595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62  |   | 5.5               | Tran   | nsverters                    | .56  |
| 5.7Diversity575.8DX Spotting form585.9Puresignal595.9.1Puresignal Control595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62   |   | 5.6               | CW     | Transmit                     | .57  |
| 5.8DX Spotting form585.9Puresignal595.9.1Puresignal Control595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62   |   | 5.7               | Dive   | ersity                       | . 57 |
| 5.9Puresignal.595.9.1Puresignal Control.595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control.605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy.605.11Wideband display.62   |   | 5.8               | DX S   | potting form                 | . 58 |
| 5.9.1Puresignal Control595.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62   |   | 5.9               | Pure   | esignal                      | . 59 |
| 5.9.2Puresignal Advanced Control605.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62  |   | 5.9.              | 1      | Puresignal Control           | . 59 |
| 5.9.3Puresignal Amplitude Display605.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62  |   | 5.9.2             | 2      | Puresignal Advanced Control  | . 60 |
| 5.10Radio Astronomy605.11Wideband display62   |   | 5.9.3             | 3      | Puresignal Amplitude Display | .60  |
| 5.11 Wideband display62   |   | 5.10              | Radi   | io Astronomy                 | .60  |
|   |   | 5.11              | Wid    | eband display                | . 62 |

|   | 5.12   | RF P  | aths Form               | . 63 |
|---|--------|-------|-------------------------|------|
|   | 5.13   | And   | romeda Popup Forms      | .63  |
|   | 5.13   | 8.1   | Gain Setting            | .63  |
|   | 5.13   | 3.2   | Band Form               | . 64 |
|   | 5.13.3 |       | Mode Form               | .64  |
|   | 5.13.4 |       | Filter Form             | .65  |
|   | 5.13   | 8.5   | Display Settings Form   | .65  |
|   | 5.13   | 8.6   | VFO settings form       | .66  |
|   | 5.13   | 8.7   | Mode Dependent Settings | .66  |
| 6 | THE    | TIS S | etup Form               | . 67 |
|   | 6.1    | Gen   | eral settings Tabs      | . 67 |
|   | 6.1.   | 1     | H/W Select Tab          | . 67 |
|   | 6.1.2  | 2     | F/W Set Tab             | . 68 |
|   | 6.1.3  | 3     | ADC Tab                 | . 69 |
|   | 6.1.4  | 4     | Options Tab             | . 69 |
|   | 6.1.   | 5     | Calibration Tab         | .71  |
|   | 6.1.   | 6     | OC Control Tab          | .72  |
|   | 6.1.7  |       | Ant/Filters Tab         | .72  |
|   | 6.1.3  | 8     | Apollo/Andromeda Tab    | .73  |
|   | 6.1.9  | 9     | Filters Tab             | .76  |
|   | 6.1.   | 10    | RX2 Tab                 | .77  |
|   | 6.1.   | 11    | Navigation Tab          | .77  |
|   | 6.2    | Aud   | io Settings Tabs        | .78  |
|   | 6.2.   | 1     | VAC1                    | .78  |
|   | 6.2.2  | 2     | VAC2                    | . 79 |
|   | 6.3    | Disp  | lay Settings Tabs       | . 80 |
|   | 6.3.   | 1     | General                 | . 80 |
|   | 6.3.2  | 2     | RX1                     | .81  |
|   | 6.3.3  | 3     | RX2                     | . 82 |
|   | 6.3.4  | 4     | ТХ                      | . 82 |
|   | 6.4    | DSP   | Settings Tabs           | .83  |
|   | 6.4.   | 1     | Options                 | .83  |
|   | 6.4.2  | 2     | CW                      | .84  |
|   | 6.4.   | 3     | AGC/ALC                 | .85  |
|   | 6.4.4  | 4     | AM/SAM                  | .86  |
|   | 6.4.   | 5     | FM                      | . 87 |
|   | 6.4.   | 6     | Audio                   | .87  |
|   | 6.4.   | 7     | EER                     | . 88 |
|   |        |       |                         |      |

| 6.4.   | 8     | NR/ANF                   |    |
|--------|-------|--------------------------|----|
| 6.4.   | 9     | MNF                      | 90 |
| 6.4.   | 10    | NB/SNB                   | 91 |
| 6.4.   | 11    | VOX/DEXP                 | 92 |
| 6.4.   | 12    | CFC                      | 93 |
| 6.5    | Trar  | nsmit Settings Tab       | 94 |
| 6.6    | PA S  | Settings Tabs            |    |
| 6.6.   | 1     | PA Gain                  |    |
| 6.6.   | 2     | Watt Meter               | 96 |
| 6.7    | Арр   | earance Settings Tabs    | 96 |
| 6.7.   | 1     | General tab              | 96 |
| 6.7.   | 2     | RX display Tab           | 97 |
| 6.7.   | 3     | Meter Tab                |    |
| 6.7.   | 4     | TX display Tab           |    |
| 6.7.   | 5     | Collapsible Display Tab  |    |
| 6.8    | Keyl  | board Settings Tabs      |    |
| 6.9    | CAT   | Control Settings Tabs    |    |
| 6.9.   | 1     | CAT                      |    |
| 6.9.   | 2     | CAT+                     |    |
| 6.9.   | 3     | User Interface           |    |
| 6.9.   | 4     | Andromeda                |    |
| 6.9.   | 5     | CAT Tests Tab            |    |
| 6.10   | Test  | s Tab                    |    |
| 6.11   | Sett  | ings Database            |    |
| 6.12   | And   | romeda Settings Editor   |    |
| 6.12   | 2.1   | Encoder Tab              |    |
| 6.12   | 2.2   | Pushbutton Tab           |    |
| 6.12   | 2.3   | Indicator Tab            |    |
| 6.12   | 2.4   | Menu Tab                 |    |
| 7 Sett | ing U | p Thetis                 |    |
| 7.1    | Sett  | ing Up Microphone Levels |    |
| 7.1.   | 1     | Adjusting the Equaliser  |    |
| 7.1.   | 2     | Adjusting the Leveler    |    |
| 7.1.   | 3     | Checking the Audio       |    |
| 7.2    | Spee  | ech Compression          |    |
| 7.3    | VOX   | <u>,</u>                 |    |
| 7.3.   | 1     | Modes of operation:      |    |
| 7.3.   | 2     | Basic gate adjustments:  |    |

| 7.3.3      | Advanced gate adjustments:         | 115 |
|------------|------------------------------------|-----|
| 7.3.4      | Expander adjustment:               | 116 |
| 7.4 Sett   | ing Up Virtual Audio and COM Ports | 116 |
| 7.4.1      | Virtual COM Using Com0Com          | 116 |
| 7.4.2      | Virtual audio – Voicemeeter Banana | 117 |
| 7.4.3      | Setting up Virtual Audio in THETIS |     |
| 7.5 Inte   | rfacing to a Linear Amplifier      | 119 |
| 7.5.1      | Setting the Operating Band         |     |
| 7.5.2      | Keying                             |     |
| 7.5.3      | ALC                                | 119 |
| 7.5.4      | Puresignal                         |     |
| 7.6 Soft   | ware Maintenance                   | 120 |
| 7.6.1      | Installing Software Updates        |     |
| 7.6.2      | Building THETIS from Source Code   |     |
| 7.7 CAT    | Control                            |     |
| 7.7.1      | Connecting Hardwired Inputs        |     |
| 7.8 Con    | trol Panel Operation               | 121 |
| 7.8.1      | Andromeda                          |     |
| 7.8.2      | Odin                               |     |
| 7.8.3      | Midi                               |     |
| 7.9 Har    | dwired Inputs                      | 126 |
| 8 Referenc | es                                 | 129 |
| 9 Revision | Notes                              | 130 |

# **1** Introduction

THETIS is a PC based software defined radio user interface application that has been developed by the HPSDR project. It is one of several user interface applications available for PC and Linux platforms that can be used with HPSDR equipment.

In conjunction with suitable radio hardware, THETIS provides the user interface and Digital Signal Processing for HF Amateur Radio operations. Functionality offered by THETIS includes:

- True dual receiver operation;
- Complete Digital signal Processing chain;
- Comprehensive spectrum and waterfall displays for activity monitoring;
- User selectable and adjustable bandwidth for QRM reduction;
- Wideband noise blanking & noise reduction;
- Operation using CW, SSB/AM and FM modes;
- Interface to digital mode decoders for digital modes;
- Extensive voice processing and compression for TX operations;
- Transmitter linearization using Puresignal;
- Antenna diversity for weak signal enhancement and QRM rejection.

THETIS is a part of a complete radio system. That system includes the antenna, the RF processing, and the user interface. Your software defined radio unit provides some of the RF processing. THETIS provides some of the processing, and the user interface. See the diagram below.



1. Your radio hardware provides a transmit/receive path.

- 2. On receive, signals are filtered, attenuated then digitised using a high performance analogue-to-digital converter. The A-D converter covers the whole HF band. Digital processing in the Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) converts a part of the HF band to zero centre frequency, and transfers the data to the PC via Ethernet. The bandwidth provided can be selected, but is usually in the range 48KHz 1.536MHz.
- 3. Depending on mode, your radio hardware may have one or two complete receiver chains.
- 4. The PC runs the THETIS program. THETIS has two halves: a user interface, and PC based signal processing.
- 5. THETIS connects to the receiver data stream and provides further signal processing to reduce noise, to select the signal of interest and demodulate it. Its user interface provides a view of the band activity in the downconverted signal is shown, and controls to tune to the required signal and demodulate it successfully.
- 6. Received audio can be connected to speakers either via the radio hardware, or via PC connected speakers.
- 7. On transmit, THETIS provides the initial signal processing to optimise the transmit signal. Audio processing is available to enhance a voice signal; a CW keyer is available. Sampled data is sent to the radio hardware via Ethernet.
- 8. The radio hardware upconverts the TX signal to the required frequency, sets its signal level, amplifies and filters it. Amplifier linearization is available: a sample of the signal from the linear amplifier is downconverted back through the receiver, and compared with the "intended" TX signal. The difference is processed by THETIS to apply pre-distortion so that the final output from the linear amplifier has approximately 20dB lower spurious signal content that a "normal" HF transmission.

None of this will work with just the antenna, just the radio hardware, or just THETIS. It is the combination of all three that provides a truly high performance radio station.

# 1.1 History

Thetis has been developed from a predecessor application "PowerSDR". PowerSDR was originally developed as a commercial product by Flex Radio Systems to control its SDR based products. PowerSDR was put into the public domain by Flex Radio Systems some time ago. It was adopted by the HPSDR project [1] and significantly developed from the original form, primarily by primarily by Bill Tracey, KD5TFD and Doug Wigley, W5WC.

THETIS represents a new development from PowerSDR, focusing on HPSDR's new "Protocol 2" radio interface. This development is led by Doug Wigley W5WC. It provides a familiar environment to existing users, but includes new interface and DSP technology to accommodate current and future radio products. THETIS can now support both the new Protocol 2 and the older Protocol 1 firmware in your radio. The main difference, from a user perspective, is that higher RX and TX sample rates are possible for Protocol 2.

# 1.2 Purpose and Structure of this Document

There are existing on-line manuals for the original PowerSDR product [2]. However significant change has occurred and this document sets out to provide a new baseline documentation for THETIS.

It is important to recognise that this is not a user manual for a radio. Instead it is a user interface for a user interface application that can be used with many different radios – including those from the

HPSDR family, and others. Details of specific radios, and capabilities that are present in some but not others, are not the scope for this document.

It consists of the following sections:

- Section 2 describes the different screen layouts available
- Section 3 describes installing and basic operations with THETIS
- Section 4 describes the commands available from the console and its menus
- Section 5 describes the operation forms available
- Section 6 describes the Setup form and its (many) tabs
- Section 7 describes how to configure various functions within THETIS

## **1.3 Writing Style**

In this manual:

- A control / setting name is highlighted **bold**
- The user setting for that control is <u>underlined</u>.
- <u>Menu > Equalizer</u> means open the "Equaliser" setting on the program's menu
- <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > RX2</u> means "open the setup form using Setup on the menu, then select the DSP tab, RX 2 sub-tab"

So for example this instruction would indicate a gain control setting: Set the **RX1 AF** slider to <u>30</u>.

## **1.4 Alternatives to THETIS**

THETIS is not the only application you can use with your radio. There are several others in common use:

- PowerSDR mrx ps is in very common use with the original "protocol 1" [10]
- SDR Console is a well respected application by Simon Brown G4ELI [11]
- LinHPSDR is a Linux application by John Melton GOORX / N1LYT, and has support for up to 7 receivers [12]
- Pihpsdr is another Linux application by John Melton and is optimised for a 7" display. It can be run on a raspberry pi processor, or other Linux computers. [13]

## **1.5 Acknowledgements**

(With apologies for those I have missed!) Contributions to this manual have been received from:

Bill Diaz KC9XG Mitch Baum - AE2A Warren Pratt NROV Scott Traurig WU2O Joe K5SO

# 2 THETIS Overview

THETIS is a program of two halves. It includes a high performance signal processing chain, to extract best performance from your radio. And it provides an intuitive user interface, to enable efficient operation of the overall radio. Firstly we will look at the user interface, then what the signal processing has to offer.

# 2.1 Screen Layout - Expanded view

The main THETIS view is the "Expanded" view. This provides a single screen showing most of the controls and settings that are likely to be used day-to-day, and a view of the spectrum to which the radio is tuned. This view is selected by clicking <u>Menu > Expand</u> on the main menu.



There are a number of other forms available for particular functions; the console is the main one.

# 2.2 Screen Layout - Collapsed view

The "Collapsed" views are alternate views onto the same spectrum and same controls. There are two different versions of collapsed view. In both cases, the top and bottom bars can be turned on or off.

## 2.2.1 Classic

The "Classic" collapsed view removed most of the user controls from the display leaving most of the screen space displaying the signal spectrum. A top bar provides controls and information; the mode and band buttons for RX1 can be displayed as a bottom bar. Access to the various buttons and settings is primarily through additional items added to the main windows menu.

This view is selected by clicking <u>Menu > Collapse</u>, then selecting <u>Menu > Display Controls > Top</u> <u>Controls</u> and <u>Menu > Display Controls > Band Controls</u> and <u>Menu > Display Controls > Mode Controls</u>



## 2.2.2 Andromeda view

The "Andromeda" collapsed view has been created to support a new Radio family with front panel buttons and rotary controls, and equipped with a 7" touchscreen display. The display layout has been optimised to provide visibility of radio settings on that small screen, and providing access to further settings through a multi-level menu bar using buttons at the bottom of the screen. The philosophy is that most day-to-day settings should be accessed either through physical controls or through the touchscreen. This view is selected by clicking <u>Menu > Collapse</u>, then <u>Menu > Display</u> <u>Controls > Andromeda Top Controls</u> and <u>Menu > Display Controls > Andromeda Button Bar</u>.



The Andromeda view provides access to more forms, to give access to the controls that have been taken away from the console to fit the display. They will not need to be accessed often – but are available when needed.

# 2.3 Changing Appearance with "Skins"

The appearance of THETIS can be changed by graphical "skins". A "skin" is a bitmap image for the screen background, and bitmap images for the various buttons. Skins are available from a several web pages (for example [3]), and can be created using bitmap image editing programs.

# 2.4 Signal Processing Chain

The signal processing chain is what gives THETIS its performance. The entire chain has been rewritten using the WDSP library created by Warren Pratt NROV. The library is well documented and interested readers are encouraged to read its guide [4]. WDSP has also been ported to Linux by John Melton [14].

#### 2.4.1 RX Block diagram

The diagram below shows a *simplified* view of the receiver processing chain. This deliberately omits detail – its purpose is to indicate the range of controls available and where they are applied. For an authoritative reference to the signal processing performed, please consult the WDSP guide [4].



The function of the blocks shown is as follows:

Your radio hardware will provide the initial part of the signal path:

- RF filters may be used to band limit the signal to the band of interest.
- A variable attenuator sets the signal level arriving at the A-D converter. The radio's performance will be vastly impaired if the ADC overloads!
- The RF signal is digitised by a high performance Analogue-to-Digital Converter (ADC). This converts the frequency range DC-55MHz in one operation.
- Digital downconverters in the radio's Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) downconvert the selected centre frequency to zero, and reduce the bandwidth and sample rate. This

limits the amount of the band the PC will be able to "see". The rate is settable by the software in the range 48KHz-1.536MHz BUT note that higher values require a higher performance PC! Depending on hardware you may between 2 and 7 of these.

- Depending on model, your radio may have a complete second receiver channel with its own ADC: this will enable Diversity reception.
- The data is transferred to your PC over an Ethernet interface. For the new "protocol 2" a gigabit connection is needed.

Thereafter the signal path is implemented in THETIS, using the PC processor to do the required signal processing. THETIS must process the signal bandwidth provided by the FPGA (48-1536KHz) to extract the wanted audio signal, possibly a sub-receiver audio signal, and provide the panadapter and waterfall displays. Because it has a high signal bandwidth, THETIS is able to provide effective noise blankers.

Because of the nature of the HPSDR project, there are many settings available to "tweak" its operation that may not be common on commodity radios. The principal user settable controls are shown. The functions are as follows:

- A wideband noise blanker removes "impulse" type noise. This is early in the flow graph to limit the impact those impulses have on later processing. Two algorithms (NB, NB2) can be selected on the console.
- Display processing to show the panadapter, waterfall and other displays.
- A bandpass filter, with user settable bandwidth, limits the signal to the bandwidth required for the current mode. It also implements any manual notch filtering to remove interfering signals. The bandwidth is set by the mode selection and can be adjusted on the console.
- A Spectral Noise Blanker (SNB) provides another algorithm to remove impulse type noise.
- A 10 channel graphic equaliser provides an option to equalise the audio response of the radio using 3 or 10 bands across the audio spectrum.
- An Automatic Gain Control (AGC) limits the signal level of received signals, to keep signals above a user set threshold approximately constant. The speed at which it adjusts can be selected.
- An Automatic Notch Filter (ANF) will automatically attempt to remove constant carrier signals from the audio passband. This is useful for dealing with spurious signals.
- Two noise reduction algorithms (NR, NR2) are available. These attempt to preserve the signal content but reduce the noise content, to get rid of background band noise.
- An Audio Peaking filter (APF) is available for CW modes to further limit the bandwidth to the signal of interest.

Depending on your radio hardware you may have one or two RF chains with one or two Analogue to Digital converters. Your radio hardware includes several downconverters. How many there are, and how they are used, will depend on the radio model and the configuration of THETIS.

- If your radio has a single RF channel and a single A-D converter, it will be capable of providing three receiver paths through the one A-D converter (RX1, RX2 and Sub-receiver). If those are used on different RF bands, then the RF preselector filters will need to be disabled in the setup form.
- If your radio hardware has two complete RF paths and two A-D converters, those same capabilities are available but RX2 can operate on a different band while RX1 and its sub-receiver have preselector filters selected. Additionally, Diversity mode reception will be available allowing use of two receivers either to enhance one signal or to minimise noise.

These options are summarised in a table:

| Radio       | Option       | Constraints  |
|-------------|--------------|--|
| Hardware    | Selected     |  |
| Single A- D | RX1          | None   |
| converter   | RX1 + RX2    | If RX1 and RX2 are in different bands, preselector filters must be |
|             |              | bypassed   |
|             | RX1 + Sub-RX | Sub-RX must be within the RX1 downconverted band segment           |
|             | RX1 + RX2 +  | If RX1 and RX2 are in different bands, preselector filters must be |
|             | Sub-RX       | bypassed   |
|             |              | Sub-RX must be within the RX1 downconverted band segment           |
|             | Diversity    | Not available.   |
| Dual A- D   | RX1          | None   |
| converter   | RX1 + RX2    | None   |
|             | RX1 + Sub-RX | Sub-RX must be within the RX1 downconverted band segment           |
|             | RX1 + RX2 +  | Sub-RX must be within the RX1 downconverted band segment           |
|             | Sub-RX       |  |
|             | Diversity    | Available  |

## 2.4.2 TX Audio Block Diagram

Much of the TX path follows similar principles to the RX path. THETIS generates the TX waveform and sends it via Ethernet to the radio; the radio implements a digital upconverter to get to the final output frequency, then the RF signal (DC to 52MHz) is created using a high performance Digital-to-Analogue Converter (DAC). Most of this is controlled automatically; there is user control over the processing to optimise the audio signal.

The diagram below shows a simplified view of the transmitter audio chain for voice modes. Detail has deliberately been left out – this diagram is to show the controls available for the audio path, and the monitor points for the console meter in TX mode. Please note that several of these settings are in the setup form. A guide to setting up the audio path has been provided in section 7.1; many of these settings can be turned off and only brought into use as experience is built up. For an authoritative reference to the signal processing performed, consult the WDSP guide [4].



The algorithms are as follows:

- The first block performs the Voice Operated Transmit (VOX) processing and also a "downward expander" algorithm. If VOX is enabled, then if the audio in level is above a defined level transmission will be initiated. There is also "antivox" processing to avoid RX audio from triggering transmission. VOX on/off, DEXP on/off and VOX threshold are all available on the console screen.
- Audio gain is set. There are separate audio gain values for microphone, line in and VAC input; the latter two are on the setup form. There is a 20dB "boost" available for the microphone this may be required with dynamic microphones.
- A phase rotator can be selected. This improves the symmetry of the audio waveform, allowing an increase in linear transmit power.
- A 10 channel graphic equaliser is provided. This allows the audio signal to be adjusted so that it is reasonably flat; this allows bass from a dynamic microphone to be reduced, or bass from an electret microphone to be boosted for example.
- A leveller is available to increase gain at low audio signal levels. This allows full TX output to be achieved if the audio is temporarily low because you have moved away from the microphone, for example.

- A Continuous Frequency Compressor (CFC) performs signal compression independently on each of 10 audio frequency bands to increase the mean-to-peak ratio. This will increase average TX power by limiting the amplitude of peaks in each band.
- A speech Compressor provides further amplitude limiting, if desired. This performance the same function as an RF speech compressor in high-end analogue radios.
- Controlled Envelope Single sideband (CESSB) algorithm can also be turned on at the same time as the speech compressor. This further limits speech peaks [16].
- Finally the automatic Level Control (ALC) ensures that the final signal level does not exceed the maximum allowed by the DAC.
- The CFC and equaliser frequency responses are not "flat" within fixed bands. User adjustments set the amplitude at each frequency point; the amplitude response is interpolated between those points, to avoid abrupt changes. The individual frequency points can also be adjusted for the TX equalisers and CFC.

Some of these algorithms pre-date others. Today many users recommend using CFC, <u>not</u> COMP and <u>not</u> CESSB. CFC provides the same end benefit, but with better fidelity through operating on multiple frequency bands independently.

Finally after the baseband processing is complete, the up-conversion to RF is performed using the FPGA in your radio hardware. This is mostly a mirror-image of the down-conversion process. The transmit signal level is set automatically by Thetis; in most radios this is by adjusting an attenuator on the RF signal.

The TX also includes an algorithm "Puresignal" to optimise the linearity of the power amplifier. This algorithm takes a sample of the transmitted signal and mixes it back down through the receiver, and compares it with the intended signal. This is then used to adjust the transmitted signal. This allows the amplifier to have much better intermodulation performance than uncorrected amplifiers and makes a substantial different to close-in noise on the HF bands.

# 3 Installing & Using THETIS

## 3.1 Installing for the First Time

This describes how to install THETIS from scratch on a PC that has not previously had THETIS installed.

Your radio will need "Protocol 2" firmware installed and working. Consult your radio manual for details of how to reflash the firmware if required.

Begin by downloading the installer. THETIS releases are available from the internet at: <u>https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-Thetis/releases</u>

1. Click on the installer (this will be a file with extension ".msi") and select <u>RUN</u>.

| 둼 🖅 📾 Start   | 😧 Releases · TAPR/OpenH × + ∨  |   | -  |   | × |
|---|--|---|----|---|---|
| $\leftarrow$ $ ightarrow$ $\ragentarrow$ GitHub, Inc. [ | US] https:// <b>github.com</b> /TAPR/OpenHPSDR-Thetis/releases   | □ ☆ ☆   | l_ | Ŀ |   |
| 💭 Why GitHub? 🗸   | Enterprise Explore ~ Marketplace Pricing ~ Search  | Sign in Sign u  | p  |   | ^ |
| 🖟 TAPR / OpenHPSE                                       | DR-Thetis  | Owner         Owner <t< td=""><td>5</td><td></td><td></td></t<> | 5  |   |   |
| <> Code 🕅 Pull requ                                     | ests 1 🕕 Security 📊 Insights   |   |    |   |   |
|   | Be notified of new releases<br>Create your free GitHub account today to subscribe to this repository for nev<br>software alongside 36 million developers.<br>Sign up | Dismiss<br>v releases and build   |    |   |   |
| Releases Tags   |  |   |    |   |   |
| Latest release<br>⊗ v2.6.7<br>◆ 716f345                 | Thetis v2.6.7 Installer <sup>™</sup> w5wc released this on May 1 · 1 commit to master since this release             Thetis v2.6.7 Installer                         |   |    |   |   |
|   | ▼ Assets 3   |   |    |   |   |
|   | Thetis_v2.6.7.0_Setup.msi  | 13.5 MB   |    |   |   |
| https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-Thetis/rel            | eases/tag/v2.6.7 • code (zip)  |   |    |   | ~ |

(You may get warnings from windows security products at this point)

2. The install script will start. Click Next.

| 🛃 Thetis Setup | – 🗆 X  |
|----------------|--|
|                | Welcome to the Thetis Setup Wizard   |
| OPENHPSDR      | The Setup Wizard will install Thetis on your computer. Click<br>Next to continue or Cancel to exit the Setup Wizard. |
|                |  |
|                |  |
|                | Back Next Cancel   |

3. (Assuming that you agree with it) click to accept the terms of the license agreement and press <u>Next</u>



 Select the <u>typical</u> option and press <u>Install</u>. You may get a windows User Account Control form asking **do you want this program to make changes to your PC** – press <u>Yes</u> if that pops up.

| 🖟 Thetis Setup  |                                      |                       | -         |      | ×  |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|------|----|
| Ready to install Thetis   |                                      |                       |           | oper |    |
| Click Install to begin the installation<br>installation settings. Click Cancel to | . Click Back to r<br>exit the wizard | eview or change<br>I. | any of yo | ur   |    |
|   |                                      |                       |           |      |    |
|   |                                      |                       |           |      |    |
|   | Back                                 | ₽Insta                |           | Cano | el |

5. The installer copies THETIS onto the PC (this is very quick!). When compete click Finish

| 🕌 Thetis Setup | - 🗆 X   |
|----------------|---|
|                | Completed the Thetis Setup Wizard                 |
|                | Click the Finish button to exit the Setup Wizard. |
|                |   |
|                |   |
|                |   |
|                | Bark Enich Canrel                                 |
|                | Back Einish Cancel                                |

6. THETIS is now installed on your PC. You should have a new desktop icon.



7. Double click the Icon to run THETIS for the first time. A window will open up, saying that it is running a series of tests for how to conduct Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) operations. This may take 10-30 minutes to complete; when complete the window will look like this:

|   | 🛄 Thetis |           |          |     |      |        | - | × |
|---|----------|-----------|----------|-----|------|--------|---|---|
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 16384  |   | ~ |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 16385  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 32768  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 32768  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 32769  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 65536  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 65536  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 65537  |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 131072 |   |   |
| F | Planning | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 131072 |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 131073 |   |   |
| F | Planning | COMPLEX   | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 262144 |   |   |
| F | Planning | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 262144 |   |   |
| F | lanning  | COMPLEX   | BACKWARD | FFT | size | 262145 |   |   |
| F | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 64     |   |   |
| F | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 128    |   |   |
| F | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 256    |   |   |
| F | planning | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 512    |   |   |
| F | Planning | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 1024   |   |   |
| F | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 2048   |   |   |
| ł | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFT | size | 4096   |   |   |
| ŀ | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 8192   |   |   |
| ł | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 16384  |   |   |
| ŀ | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 32/68  |   |   |
| ł | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 05530  |   |   |
|   | lanning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 1310/2 |   |   |
| ľ | ranning  | REAL      | FORWARD  | FFI | size | 202144 |   |   |
| F | FTW plar | nning cor | mplete.  |     |      |        |   | ~ |

- 8. THETIS "proper" will now start, bringing you to the "expanded" display screen.
- 9. Connect your radio using Ethernet, via a suitable router capable of gigabit speeds
- 10. Connect an antenna to the "ANT1" terminal of your radio
- 11. Connect speakers or headphones to your radio. Set the RX1 AF and Master AF sliders to 20.
- 12. Power up your radio

#### 13. Click <u>Menu > Setup</u>.

| neral Audio Display DSP    | Transmit                                       | PA Settings                  | Appear    | ance Keybo   | bard C                | AT Contro           | I Tests  |  |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------------|-----------|--|-----------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| /W Select F/W Set ADC      | Options Ca                                     | alibration 0                 | C Control | Ant/Filters  | Filters               | RX2                 | Navigation   |  |
| Radio Model<br>ANAN-200D V | Hardware O<br>Mic I T<br>Bias O C<br>PTT I O C | ptions<br>ip ORin<br>Off OOn | þ         | Network Settings   Reuse Last IP Address  Enable Static IP Address  Network Watchdog  Protocol 1 |                       |                     |  |  |
|                            | Region<br>United                               | Jex<br>Kingdom ∼<br>tended   | •         | 192 -  | 168 ¢<br>10 ¢<br>10 ¢ | 0 ÷<br>30 ÷<br>30 ÷ | 34 ÷ •<br>110 ÷ ·<br>115 ÷ ·<br>120 ÷ ·<br>Select IP |  |
| Receive Only               |  |                              |           | ANAN Addre<br>IP: 192.1<br>MAC:  | ess<br>68.0.20        |                     | Ver: 0.0<br>ID: Hermes                               |  |

- 14. Select your radio from the list on the left, and make any other settings you want (I've also set the microphone connections in the centre correctly for a PC microphone). Press <u>OK</u>.
- 15. THETIS returns to the expanded display screen. Make sure your radio is connected to the network and powered up; click the top left **On/Off** button, and THETIS will spring to life!



If you get a message "Error starting SDR hardware, is it connected & powered?" then THETIS has been unable to find a suitable radio on the network. Assuming that it is powered up, you will need to investigate the network connection. Physical cabling, router settings and windows security products could all intrude.

# 3.2 Getting Started with THETIS

This is necessarily dependent upon your radio as well as THETIS. However this should be a good starting point!

- 1. If everything has gone well, THETIS should have started. You should see activity on the central display.
- 2. Select your required band, and required mode.
- 3. Use the **AGC Gain** slider to set the green AGC line just above the local ambient noise level.
- 4. Audio should be head from your speakers or headphones; use the **RX1 AF** slider to set the volume.
- 5. The central display gives you a view of band activity. You will see a "noise" level, with signals emerging above the noise. In the centre, a red vertical line tells you the tuning frequency; a vertical grey bar shows you the current receiver passband.
- 6. There are several ways to tune:
  - a. Hover over the **VFO A** displayed frequency, and type in a new value
  - b. Hover your mouse over one of the digits in the **VFO A** frequency. The mouse scroll wheel will now step that digit up or down.
  - c. Elsewhere in the display, use the mouse scroll wheel. That will move up or down by one tune step per "click". (The tune step is displayed in the central VFO area).
  - d. Click in the spectrum display by a signal of interest and drag it to the centre. Then use the mouse scroll wheel for fine tuning. (Be careful not to do this while in the RX passband grey bar you will move the RX IF filter instead. If you inadvertently move the receiver IF passband: click one of the **Filter** buttons to reset it.)

Look at the CPU utilisation at bottom left. If this is high (50% +) the program may not behave as expected. The principal way to reduce CPU loading is to reduce the sample rate of data being passed from the radio to the PC: see section 6.1.2. This will be able to make a huge difference!

# 3.3 Selecting & Tuning Antennas

Your radio probably supports more than one antenna. The HPSDR project radios generally support three antennas, plus options for the receiver to be connected to different sources. Consult the manual for your radio to find out what is available.

#### 3.3.1 Selecting Antennas for each Band

When the software is newly installed with a "clean" database of settings, ANT1 will be selected for RX and TX on all bands. The antenna selection can be changed using the <u>Menu > Setup > Ant/Filters</u>. This is fairly self explanatory: it allows choice by band, and allows options for separate RX and TX antennas. Once those settings have been made, the antenna will automatically be selected when the band is changed.

The current RX and TX antennas are shown in the status bar. You can also change antennas by clicking those indicators and selecting ANT1, ANT2 or ANT3 for each of RX and TX.

If the settings you have chosen have a different antenna for RX and TX, there is a console button **Rx Ant** to switch the RX antenna between its normal antenna and the TX antenna. This may be useful in difficult propagation conditions, or if one is directional and the other is not.

See section 6.1.7.2 for more information.

#### 3.3.2 Antenna Tuning

Current HPSDR project radio hardware does not include an automatic antenna tuner. The software does provide a way to key the transmitter to carry out tuning.

The console **TUNE** button, when pressed, puts the radio into a TX mode with a carrier signal. The power level is controlled using the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u>. It is suggested, until you have reason to do different, that it be set to transmit at 10W when in tune mode. That will protect against damage caused by high VSWR and not overheat the PA. This should provide sufficient power to tune an external auto tuner, or to read VSWR and tune using a manual ATU.

The Console's meter can be configured to provide several possible displays during transmit operations. The function provided during Tune is set in the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u> form.

There is an option in the <u>Menu > Setup > Ant/Filters > Antenna</u> form to remove SWR protection when tuning at lower power levels. That will prevent the system from reacting to poor VSWR, which is likely to occur when tuning.

## **3.4 Voice Mode Operation**

(If you are using the Andromeda "collapsed" display, the console settings are available through the menu bar; the "mode specific settings" should be selected to show the buttons and sliders)

#### 3.4.1 Receiving Voice

- 1. Connect a suitable antenna to your antenna connector (ANT1).
- 2. Connect suitable speakers or headphones to your radio.
- 3. Set RX1 AF to 20 and Master AF to 20; SQL off.
- 4. Start the radio by pressing the console **On/Off** button
- 5. Select the band you want to operate, and the audio mode (LSB or USB in the first instance).
- 6. Select <u>2.7K</u> as an initial filter width.
- 7. Set attenuation (Att or S-Att) to OdB
- 8. If you get ADC overload indications: use the **ATT** or **S-ATT** controls to add attenuation in front of the receiver. It is suggested you should have at least 10dB margin in the first instance.
- 9. Select <u>Panafall</u> as the display mode. You will see a red line in the middle indicating your carrier frequency; the grey band will indicate your receiver passband.
- 10. You will see spectrum activity; probably a noise floor, with some signals.
- 11. Set **AGC** to <u>Med</u>. Use the **AGC Gain** slider to move the green bar to just above the noise floor.
- 12. SSB voice signals will be seen in the panadapter as "jittery" signals about 3KHz wide. Zoom the panadapter so that the display width is in the region 50-100KHz; SSB will be distinctly wider than CW or spurious tones and approximately the same as your displayed filter width.
- 13. Tune a signal. Click on or near the signal with a mouse and drag it to the centre; then use the mouse scroll wheel to fine tune.
- 14. Adjust **RX1 AF** and/or **master AF** for a comfortable volume.

- 15. The **RX1 meter** (top right) will normally be set to <u>Signal</u>: this indicates the signal strength on the normal "S units" scale.
- 16. You can use the RX1 DSP group of buttons to remove noise and improve reception.
- 17. If the signal of interest is very close to others, you may get interference into the top end or bottom end of the audio passband. You can select a smaller IF filter passband (either with a button or the **Width** slider). You can use the **Shift** slider to move the filter passband.

| Inetis v2.6.9 (1/25)     | 5/20)   |                                  |   |   |   |  |  | -  | $\Box$ ×  |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|--|---|
| Setup Memory             | Wave Equalizer  | xvtrs cwx<br>7.144 24<br>Modes   | Diversity Collap<br>40<br>VFO Syn<br>VFO A<br>Lock: A<br>Rx Ant | nc Spot Li<br>nc Tune<br>Step:<br>B 7.000000<br>Save Re | inearity RA<br>10Hz +<br>BandStack<br>store 1 5 | WB PI BPF<br>VFO B<br>TX 401                         | 7.188 2 <u>7</u> 0<br>M All Modes              | RX1 Meter<br>-81                             | TX Meter  |
| MOX<br>DUP PS-A          | 7 110<br>-60<br>-70<br>-80<br>-90<br>100                  | 7.120                            | 7.130   | 7.140   | 7.150   | 7.160  | 7,170  | Signal 9                                     | <ul> <li>Fwd Pwr</li> <li>80</li> <li>60</li> <li>30</li> <li>20</li> </ul> |
| RX1 AF: 38               | -110  | 7.120                            |   | 7.140   | 7.150   | hannalluntapartan<br>7.160                           | 7.170  | 17<br>10<br>VHF+                             | 15 12<br>6 LFMF<br>WWV SWL  |
| AGC Gain: 83<br>Drive: 9 |   |                                  |   |   |   |  |  | LSB<br>CWL<br>AM<br>DIGL                     | USB DSB<br>CWU FM<br>SAM SPEC<br>DIGU DRM                                   |
| Med V OdB V<br>SQL: -160 | 27797.5Hz<br>Pan:   | -43.4dBm 7.                      | 172 037 MHz<br>Center   | Zoom:   | -636.61   | tz -94.3dBm<br>0.5x                                  | 7.143 603 MHz                                  | 5.0k<br>3.3k                                 | 4.4k 3.8k<br>2.9k 2.7k  |
|                          | 0 Beat A <<br>IF->V A ↔<br>RIT 0 XIT<br>0 ÷ 0<br>VAC1 VAC | B MUT<br>B MUT<br>0 Vol<br>2 Vol | SNB<br>BIN<br>+MNF<br>Pan<br>Vol                                | A Peak  | MIC<br>COMP<br>VOX<br>DEXP                      | <ul> <li>10 dB</li> <li>2 dB</li> <li>-40</li> </ul> | Low High<br>100 3000 C<br>RX EQ TX EQ<br>TX FL | 2.4k<br>1.0k<br>Width:<br>Shift:<br>Low 3000 | 2.1k 1.8k<br>Var 1 Var 2<br>Reset<br>High 100 \$                            |
| 📃 1024 x 721 🔹           | 10%   |                                  |   |   |   |  | 10:41:15 utc Tue                               | 18 Feb 2020                                  | 10:41:15 loc 👌  |

#### **3.4.2 Voice TX**

Follow the instructions in section 7.1 to set up your microphone level. Consult your radio's manual for details. This is very important on first use!

Once you have done that, transmitting voice should be as simple as keying the radio and talking normally into the microphone. You will see a display of the transmitted spectrum; if you select **MON** (preferably using headphones rather than speakers) you will hear your transmitted audio.

THETIS can be keyed into transmit in several ways:

- 1. Through a hardwired switch connected to the microphone input on the radio itself.
- 2. Using the **MOX** button on the console.
- 3. Using the PC keyboard: by default the spacebar will toggle between TX and RX. Ensure that THETIS still has the Windows "focus" though if you open other forms!
- 4. Using CAT commands, from external units
- 5. Using a switch wired to a serial port strobe input (see section 7.7.1.1).

The RF output power can be controlled using the **DRIVE** control on the console. Drive indicates approximately the percentage of full power to be transmitted. It is possible to perform more accurate calibration – see section 3.8.

The console's meter can be configured to provide several possible displays during transmit. The full set is described in section 4.1.14. In the first instance the following three are most likely to be useful:

| Fwd Pwr | Displays the TX power being generated.                                   |
|---------|--|
| Mic     | Displays the microphone signal level; you should be achieving 0dB peaks. |
| SWR     | Displays the VSWR presented by the selected antenna                      |

Operating using VOX is simple. The ambient audio level is shown in a coloured bar below the **VOX** slider: adjust the **VOX** slider so that the audio level is shown as green to the left of the slider position, and not red to the right of the slider position. This means ambient audio will not trigger VOX. Then click the **VOX** button on the console. Thereafter speak normally; TX will be selected when you begin to speak, and will be released a short delay after you stop speaking.

If you find the radio keys onto transmit, and stays there, press VOX again to turn it off!

For more comprehensive VOX adjustments, see section 7.3.

THETIS includes speech compression algorithms. For details of how to use these, please see section 7.2.

# 3.5 CW operation

#### 3.5.1 Connecting a Key

There are several options. A key can be connected to the radio, or to the PC. It can be a "straight" key, or an iambic keyer paddle. Iambic paddles can only be connected to the radio: the keyer function is in the radio hardware.

To connect a key to your radio: follow the instructions in your radio manual carefully. The connections for most radios will be as follows:



To connect a key direct to your PC, with will need access to a serial COM port. Nowadays these are USB plug-in devices but widely available from many sources. Install the appropriate driver so that when plugged into your radio, a COM port number is allocated that you can see in your PC Control Panel's Device Manager. See section 7.7.1 for more details.

#### 3.5.2 Receiving CW

- 1. Connect a suitable antenna to your antenna connector (ANT1).
- 2. Connect suitable speakers or headphones to your radio.

- 3. Set RX1 AF to 20 and Master AF to 20; SQL off.
- 4. Start the radio by pressing the console **On/Off** button
- 5. Select the band you want to operate, and the audio mode (CWU in the first instance).
- 6. Select <u>1.0K</u> as an initial filter width.
- 7. Set attenuation (ATT or S-ATT) to <u>0</u>dB
- 8. Select Pitch Freq (Hz): to <u>600</u>
- 9. Select Show CW Zero line
- 10. If you get ADC overload indications: use the **ATT** or **S-ATT** controls to add attenuation in front of the receiver. It is suggested you should have at least 10dB margin in the first instance.
- 11. Select <u>Panafall</u> as the display mode. You will see a red line in the middle indicating your carrier frequency; the grey band will indicate your receiver passband. The yellow vertical line indicates the centre frequency you should tune to.
- 12. You will see spectrum activity; probably a noise floor, with some signals.
- 13. Set **AGC** to <u>Med</u>. Use the **AGC Gain** slider to move the green bar to just above the noise floor.
- 14. CW signals will be seen in the panadapter as a single tone above the noise floor. Zoom the panadapter so that the display width in the region 20-40KHz.
- 15. Tune a signal. Click on or near the signal with a mouse and drag it to the centre; then use the mouse scroll wheel to fine tune.
- 16. Adjust **RX1 AF** and/or **master AF** for a comfortable volume.
- 17. The **RX1 meter** (top right) will normally be set to <u>Signal</u>: this indicates the signal strength on the normal "S units" scale.
- 18. You can use the RX1 DSP group of buttons to remove noise and improve reception. Selecting **BIN** to enable Binaural mode is appropriate.
- 19. If the band is very busy and many signals are present, select **RX1** to enable the Audio Peaking Filter (APF). Set its **Tune** slider to <u>0</u>, **Bandwidth** slider to <u>200</u>, **Gain** slider to <u>10</u>

#### 3.5.3 Transmitting CW

- 1. Follow the tuning procedures to tune your antenna (section 3.3.2)
- 2. Select Sidetone
- 3. Tick Semi Break-in and set its delay(ms) to 300
- 4. Set **Master AF** to <u>20</u>. This sets the sidetone audio level.
- 5. Move the **Drive** slider to select the CW power level you want to transmit. It is suggested that you start at <u>50</u> for 50% of max power.
- 6. Select **TX meter** to <u>Fwd Pwr</u>
- 7. If you are using an iambic keyer, set **Speed** to the number of words per minute you wish to transmit at
- 8. Press the key to begin transmission. The TX meter will indicate output power.
- 9. Adjust **Master AF** for a comfortable audio level.

#### Could someone with knowledge of CW contribute to this please?

#### 3.5.4 QSK

Thetis version 2.6.3 and onwards supports operating QSK in CW modes, and REQUIRES Protocol 2 firmware as follows:

• ANAN-7000 (all versions) or ANAN-8000: Protocol 2 firmware version 1.7 or later.

• ANAN-200D: Protocol 2 version 1.6 or later.

QSK is selected using the button in the "CW Break-In" section of the CW sub-panel of the main console when operating in CW modes (CWU or CWL). The button will step through settings **Off**, **Semi**, **QSK**. If the Protocol 2 firmware version currently loaded in your radio is older than that required (see above), the QSK setting is disabled. With QSK (sometimes called "full break-in") enabled, receiver audio can be heard between CW elements (dots and dashes). This enables monitoring activity while transmitting. It's very useful when working a split-frequency or simplex DX pileup, operating in a contest, or any time the ability to hear what's going on while sending is desired.

Selecting QSK to activate the QSK features causes several settings to take effect that enable optimal QSK operation. These include:

- AGC is set to Custom mode (more on this later)
- PTT is disabled (it's handled in the firmware on CW when QSK is engaged)
- Semi break-in mode is enabled, and its delay is set to zero (0).
- Since Thetis MOX is not active in QSK (necessary for quick response), there is no transmit spectral displays and NO TRANSMIT METERING. Simply turning off QSK will resume the display and metering of normal transmit behaviour, either with PTT or semi-break-in.

When QSK is de-selected (or when changing to a non-CW mode, including when this happens as a result of clicking a band button), everything is set back to the way it was before QSK was enabled.

While operating QSK, the sidetone level becomes tied to the monitor level, which can be set in the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u>, monitor sub-panel, with the control labelled "TX AF". Since it is a separate control from the receiver audio, the sidetone can be adjusted to be louder or softer than the receive audio according to preference. The setting remains in effect until QSK is disabled, at which time it returns to its previous value. TX AF levels will then switch back and forth between the QSK and non-QSK setting depending on the state of the QSK button.

With QSK enabled your own signal is heard in the receiver while transmitting. When operating with a single VFO (i.e. not split) the tone heard is identical to the CW pitch setting, since that determines the transmitter offset in CW when in tranceive mode. Depending on the sidetone volume, it may be possible to distinguish between the two tones due to a slight time difference between them. If the transmit frequency is moved slightly away from its transceiver offset, either by changing RIT/XIT or tuning the transmitter off frequency a bit using split mode, both tones will be clearly heard at different frequencies.

You will want to experiment with the Custom-mode AGC settings to tailor QSK behaviour to your liking. This is done by activating QSK, then going into <u>Menu > Settings > DSP > AGC/ALC</u>. The AGC settings are on the left. The following settings are a good starting place:

- Slope 5
- Max Gain 100
- Decay 1
- Hang 12.

Additional QSK Operating Notes:

1. Although semi-break-in can be manually enabled with a delay of 0 without QSK, this results in something less than true QSK. It will work but nothing will be audible between CW elements unless sending very slowly. The new QSK mode makes use of the AGC Custom

mode setting and increases the AGC hang threshold to a high enough value so that AGC hang doesn't blank out the receiver between CW elements.

- 2. The key-down delay (<u>Menu > Setup > General > Options</u>) is now limited to permit a setting no shorter than 7ms to ensure a clean CW signal. Setting it lower than this would cause key clicks to be transmitted due to keying the CW signal before the relays have fully engaged. This is not healthy for the relays, and other operators on the band will not appreciate the resulting key clicks that are produced, which may extend up and down the band for 10s of KHz. Some external amplifiers may also need a longer delay, although this setting should work with most. Check your amplifier's manual and timing requirements before using its QSK capability. In the other direction, increasing key-down delay longer than about 10ms reduces the time available to hear signals between CW elements, defeating the purpose of QSK. Likewise, key-up delays longer than a few ms is unnecessary and you likely will find that the minimum of 1ms works fine.
- 3. When in QSK, the usual cycling of the MOX function in Thetis doesn't occur. As a result, checking for band boundaries doesn't happen and will not prevent you from transmitting out of band. Use caution! Prevention may come in the next release.

## 3.6 Digital Mode Operation

Data modes require an additional PC application, to act as the user interface and modulator / demodulator for an audio stream. There are many well-known programs available: for example DM780 (for PSK31, for example) and WSJT-X (for the JT65 like modes).

With an analogue transceiver, data modes are easy to configure. Simply connect the radio's audio in and out to a PC sound card via a transformer connection, connect the radio to the PC serial port, and the digital program will be able to access the radio through a sound card and control TX/RX by CAT commands.

With THETIS the process is similar. The key difference is: the audio is already "in" the PC. We need to connect the two programs internally to the PC. The solution is simple – use Virtual cables. These are software programs that run on the same PC as THETIS, and create a software interface for audio and serial. Both programs "see" a digital audio stream and serial port connection.

Section 7.4 describes how to download and configure the virtual cable drivers required. There are several choices available. This section assumes that you have followed those guides, and describes how to configure WSJT-X. Other programs will follow a similar principle.

Remember that most data modes are high duty cycle. You will need to reduce the peak TX power to avoid overheating your PA.



#### 3.6.1 Setting up Virtual Audio in THETIS

THETIS needs to be set up to use the virtual COM and virtual audio connections.

- 1. Run Voicemeeter Banana from your windows menu
- 2. Run THETIS
- 3. Open <u>Menu > Setup > CAT Control</u>
- 4. In CAT Control select Port to COM21
- 5. Set serial parameters to baud <u>9600</u> parity <u>none</u> data <u>8</u> stop <u>1</u>
- 6. Tick Enable CAT



- 7. Open <u>Menu > Setup > Audio > VAC1</u>
- 8. Tick Enable VAC1; Driver MME
- 9. Set TX and RX gains to <u>OdB</u>
- 10. Select Input: Voicemeeter Output
- 11. Select Output: Voicemeeter Input
- 12. Tick Auto Enable: enable for digital modes, disable for all others

| eneral                        | Audio                              | Display                 | DSP             | Transmit      | PA Settings  | Appearance  | Keyboard                                       | CAT Control  | Tests  |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------|--|---|--|--|--|
| /AC 1                         | VAC 2                              |                         |                 |               |  |   |  |  |  |
| VE                            | nable VA                           | C 1                     |                 |               | Buffer Siz   | ze  | Gain (dB)                                      |  |  |
| Virtua                        | l Audio (                          | Cable Setu              | p               |               | 2048   | $\sim$  | RX: 0  | Combi  | ine VAC<br>Channels                                      |
| Drive                         | er: MN                             | IE                      |                 | ~             | Courts C   | 2-1-  | TX: 0  | Direct I/  | 0  |
| Input                         | Voi                                | ceMeeter                | Output (        | VB-Aud $\sim$ | Sample F   | Kate  | Mono/Stereo                                    |  | tout to VAC  |
| Outp                          | ut: Voi                            | ceMeeter                | Input ()/       | R-Audio V     | 48000  | $\sim$  | Stereo   |  | tput to VAC  |
| Auto                          | Enable<br>Enable for<br>for all ot | or Digital<br>hers      | modes, I        | Disable       | Allow I<br>VAC fo<br>Allow 1<br>overric<br>Phone<br>Bypase<br>playba | PTT to overri<br>or Phone<br>SPACE to<br>de/bypass VA<br>MOX to<br>de/bypass VA<br>s VAC for rec<br>ick | de/bypass<br>IC for Phone<br>IC for<br>vording | Buffer Latence<br>Ring<br>In: 120 -<br>Manual<br>Portu | e RX2<br>cy (ms)<br>Buffer<br>Out: 120<br>Manua<br>Audio |
| TO V<br>Over<br>Unde<br>Var F | AC:<br>flows<br>rflows<br>Ratio    | 1109<br>379<br>1.000852 | Force<br>000000 | •             | FROM VA<br>Overflows<br>Underflows<br>Var Ratio                      | C:<br>364<br>290<br>1.001122  | Force  | In: 120 -<br>Manual                                    | Manual   |

- 13. Select mode = <u>DIGU</u> and tune to <u>7.074MHz</u>
- 14. Set **Drive** to <u>25</u> or below.
- 15. Set the filter width to 2.5KHz
- 16. Start THETIS. You should hear audio from the PC speakers it has been routed to Voicemeeter Banana and sent to the speakers from there. In the middle of its display you should see a bargraph indicating the audio level from THETIS:



THETIS is now ready to go. You are ready to use WSJT-X to connect to the other end of the virtual links!

## 3.6.2 Setting Up WSJT-X

- 1. Run WSJT-X
- 2. Select <u>File > Settings...</u>
- 3. Enter your station details on the **general** tab
- 4. Select the Radio tab. Select Rig Kenwood TS-2000
- 5. Select PTT Method <u>CAT</u>
- 6. In **CAT control** set **Serial Port** <u>COM22</u>
- 7. Select baud rate <u>9600</u> data bits <u>8</u> stop bits <u>1</u> handshake <u>default</u>

| enera <u>l</u> <u>R</u> adio A <u>u</u> dio Tx <u>M</u> acros Reporting Fi | requencies Colours | Advanced       |                |                      |
|--|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| g: Kenwood TS-2000   |                    |                | $\sim$         | Poll Interval: 1 s 🌲 |
| CAT Control  | PTT Method         |                |                |                      |
| Serial Port: COM22 ~   | <u>○ vox</u>       | 0              | <u>D</u> TR    |                      |
| Serial Port Parameters   | ● CAT              | 0              | R <u>T</u> S   |                      |
| Baud Rate: 9600 V  | Port: USB          |                |                | $\checkmark$         |
| Data Bits  | Transmit Audio So  | urce           |                |                      |
| ◯ D <u>e</u> fault ◯ Se <u>v</u> en  | O Rear/Data        | ۲              | <u>F</u> ront/ | /Mic                 |
| Stop Bits  | Mode               |                |                |                      |
| ○ Default  | None               | () US <u>B</u> |                | ○ Data/P <u>k</u> t  |
| Handshake  | Split Operation    |                |                |                      |
| Default <u>N</u> one     XON/XOFF <u>H</u> ardware                         | None               | ◯ Rig          |                | 🔿 Fake It            |
| Force Control Lines  |                    |                |                |                      |
| DTR: V RTS: V  | Test CAT           |                |                | Test PTT             |
|  |                    |                |                |                      |
|  |                    |                |                |                      |

- 8. Click <u>Test CAT</u>. After a few moments it should light up green
- 9. Select the **Audio** tab. Select Input = <u>Voicemeeter Output</u>; Select output = <u>Voicemeeter Input</u>

| Settings          |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        | ?               | )      |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|----------------|---------|----------|--------|-----------------|--------|
| Genera <u>l</u>   | <u>R</u> adio | A <u>u</u> dio | Tx <u>M</u> acros | Reporting      | Frequencies    | Colours | Advanced |        |                 |        |
| Soundca           | rd            |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
| Input:            | VoiceMee      | ter Output (   | (VB-Audio Voice   | Meeter VAIO)   |                |         |          | $\sim$ | Right           | $\sim$ |
| Ou <u>t</u> put:  | VoiceMee      | ter Input      | elect the audio   | CODEC to use f | for receiving. |         |          | $\sim$ | Mono            | $\sim$ |
| Save Dire         | ectory        |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
| Loc <u>a</u> tion | : C:/Users    | /laure/App[    | Data/Local/WSJ    | T-X/save       |                |         |          |        | S <u>e</u> lect |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
| AzEl Dire         | ctory         |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
| Location          | : C:/Users    | /laure/App[    | Data/Local/WSJ    | T-X            |                |         |          |        | Select          |        |
| Rememb            | er power s    | ettings by t   | band              |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
| Tran              | smit          |                |                   |                | Tune           |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |
|                   |               |                |                   |                |                |         |          |        |                 |        |

10. In the WSJT-X program Select <u>Mode > FT8</u>. The program should start to decode signals!

| WSJT-X   | v2.1.2                               | 2 by K                                 | (1JT<br>Mode                             | De          | code                                 | Sav                                | a Tor                                       | Je Ho                                       | In       |                            |                |                   |                   |        | _                    |                                | ×                        |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|-------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|---|----------|----------------------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------|----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ne conige  | Band Activity                        |  |  |             |                                      |                                    |   |   |          |                            |                |                   | Rx Frequ          | iency  |                      |                                |                          |
| UTC  | dB                                   | DT                                     | Freq                                     |             | Mes                                  | sag                                | le  |   |          | UTC                        | dB             | DT                | Freq              | 1      | Messa                | age                            |                          |
| 183615<br>183615<br>183615<br>183615<br>183615<br>183615 | -7<br>-4<br>-10<br>-16<br>-10<br>-17 | 0.6<br>0.5<br>0.8<br>0.7<br>0.8<br>0.8 | 370<br>599<br>986<br>1187<br>1252<br>793 | ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ | CQ<br>7X0<br>DK4<br>CQ<br>ZL4<br>7X0 | EA7<br>AD<br>KQ<br>TA7<br>TT<br>AD | IEZ<br>S57A<br>HA3P<br>SO K<br>SP9C<br>Y03G | IM86<br>M R-<br>V 73<br>N90<br>SE K<br>A KN | <b>^</b> | 183515<br>183545<br>183615 | -7<br>-8<br>-2 | 0.2<br>0.2<br>0.3 | 823<br>823<br>825 | ~ :    | ZS6C<br>ZS6C<br>ZS6C | IK5YM<br>IK5YM<br>IK5YM        | H JN!^<br>H JN!<br>H JN! |
| 183615   | -20                                  | 0.8                                    | 833                                      | ~           | E77                                  | WA                                 | EA5W  | RR7   | s Y      | <                          |                |                   |                   |        |                      |                                | >                        |
| CQ only  | Log (                                | 250                                    | <u>S</u> top                             | )           |                                      | onito                              | r )   | Erase                                       |          | <u>D</u> ecode             | E <u>n</u> ab  | le Tx             | <u>H</u> alt T    | x      | I                    | une                            | Menus                    |
| 40m ~  |                                      | 7                                      | <b>.</b> 07₄                             | <b>1</b> C  | 000                                  |                                    | Tx 8  | x even/:<br>820 Hz                          | 1st      | Hold Tx F                  |                | Ge                | nerate Std        | i Msgs | s Ne:                | xt Nov                         | , Pwr                    |
| 80   | [                                    | DX                                     | Call                                     |             | DX Gr                                | id                                 | Rx 1  | 320 Hz                                      |          |                            | (m             |                   |                   |        |                      | ) Tx <u>1</u><br>) Tx <u>2</u> |                          |
| ►-60<br>-40  | [                                    | 100                                    | kun                                      |             | ۵dd                                  |                                    | Rep   | ort -15<br>uto Sea                          | <b></b>  | 🔽 Call 1st                 |                |                   |                   |        |                      | ) Tx <u>3</u>                  | 3                        |
| -20<br>-20<br>62 dB                                      |                                      | <u>20</u>                              | )20 F<br>18:3                            | -el<br>6:   | o 1<br>43                            | 9                                  |   | ato Seq                                     |          | U Can Ist                  |                | CQ                | 58NJJ 109(        | ,      |                      | ) Tx2<br>) Tx3<br>) Tx3        |                          |
| Receiv   | ving                                 |  | Thetis                                   |             | F                                    | Т8                                 |   |   |          |                            |                |                   |                   |        |                      | 13/1                           | 5 WD:6m                  |

- 11. In THETIS, select "MIC" as the TX meter mode.
- 12. In WSJT-X, Press <u>Tune</u>. Your radio will begin to transmit a test signal.
- 13. Adjust the Power slider at the right of WSJT-X so that the MIC level just reaches 0dB.
- 14. Press <u>TUNE</u> again to cancel TX.

At this point you are set up to use WSJT-X with THETIS. Using other data mode programs is similar, and lots of advice is available on the internet. Remember to keep your TX power down to avoid overheating your PA!

# 3.7 Using PC Audio Connections

The radio can be operated in two ways: with microphone, speakers etc connected to the radio; and with microphone/speaker audio routed through the PC. The latter is useful if the PC is in a different location from the radio.

To use the radio's connections: make sure **VAC1** and **VAC2** are turned <u>off</u> on the console. Consult your radio manual regarding speaker, headphone and microphone connections. <u>Menu > Setup</u> <u>Transmitter</u> form has a selector to choose between **Mic In** and **Line In** (probably on your radio rear panel).

Note on Windows Sound Interfaces:

MME: This is the most compatible with all audio devices.

Windows DirectSound: This is more recent than MME with potentially less latency.

Windows WASAPI: This host is the most recent Windows interface, that supports, between applications (such as Audacity) and the soundcard driver. WASAPI was first officially released in 2007 in Windows Vista. WASAPI is particularly useful for "loopback" devices for recording computer playback. 24-bit recording devices are supported. Playback is emulated using this interface.

To enable PC audio, it is necessary to select a sound card for VAC1 (for RX1) and possibly VAC2 (for RX2). The settings will be PC and audio dependent but these work on one windows 10 laptop:

- 1. Open <u>Menu > Setup > Audio > VAC1</u> (see section 6.2)
- 2. Click Enable VAC1

- 3. Select Driver: MME
- 4. Select **Input**: (choose your desired audio source)
- 5. Select Output: (choose your desired RX1 speaker/headphone destination)
- 6. Select **RX gain** and **TX gain** initially to <u>O</u>dB

| AC 1 VA   | C 2   |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| Enabl<br>Virtual Au<br>Driver:<br>Input:<br>Output: | le VAC 1<br>vdio Cable Setup<br>MME<br>Microsoft Sound Mapper - Int<br>Microsoft Sound Mapper - OL<br>V | Buffer Size<br>2048 ~<br>Sample Rate<br>48000 ~  | Gain (dB)<br>RX: 0 ÷<br>TX: 0 ÷<br>Mono/Stereo<br>Stereo | Combine VAC<br>Input Channels<br>Direct I/Q<br>Output to VAC                         |
| Auto Ena  | ble<br>ble for Digital modes, Disable<br>all others   | VAIC for Phone     Allow SPACE to     override/bypass     Allow MOX to     override/bypass     Phone     Bypass VAC for     playback | VAC for Phone<br>VAC for<br>recording                    | Buffer Latency (ms)<br>RingBuffer<br>In: 120 	Out: 120<br>Manual Manual<br>PortAudio |
| TO VAC:<br>Overflow<br>Underflo<br>Var Ratio        | → Force<br>→ Force<br>→ 1.000000 ÷  | FROM VAC:<br>Overflows 0<br>Underflows 0<br>Var Ratio 1.0000   | Force  | In: 120 + Out: 120<br>Manual Manua   |

You will now be able to hear RX1 audio through your PC speakers, and use a PC microphone for TX.

For digital modes, it is necessary to run the digital mode decoder program on the same PC and then interconnect that program with THETIS using Virtual Audio Cables. The procedure is described in section 7.4.

It is possible to connect many types of audio device to your PC, and use those for your radio activities. For example high performance input & output devices, microphones, speakers and headphones are all available. You will recognise the device names in the input and output sections on the VAC form.

#### 3.8 **TX Power Calibration**

As shipped, your radio should provide RF output at approximately the level set by the **Drive** slider. If you have access to a calibrated power meter, it is possible to adjust the THETIS settings so that the delivered power will be as measured by the power meter. This process can only be as good as the quality of the power meter: if that is inaccurate, then this process will not be helpful!

If you have a good quality, trusted, and preferably calibrated, meter - then please read on.

- 1. Set your radio to use the ANT1 antenna connector (Menu > Setup > General > Ant/Filters)
- 2. Connect your power meter to the ANT 1 connector, and an appropriately rated dummy load to the power meter.
- 3. Select the **160m** band
- 4. Open the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u> form
- 5. Set the Tune Power level to <u>10</u> and <u>un</u>tick Use Drive Power
- 6. Open the <u>Menu > Setup > PA Settings</u> form

| General | Audio     | Display  | DSP    | Transmit  | PA Settings | Appeara  | ance     | Keyboard | CAT Control | Tests |       |
|---------|-----------|----------|--------|-----------|-------------|----------|----------|----------|-------------|-------|-------|
| PA Gain | Watt      | Meter    |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
| Gain    | By Band   | (dB) ANA | N 200D |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
| 160     | )m: 49.   | 5 🜲      | VH     | F0: 56.2  | ÷ VH        | F7: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 80      | )m: 50.   | 5 🜲      | VH     | IF1: 56.2 | ÷ VH        | F8: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 60      | )m: 50.   | 5 🜲      | VH     | IF2: 56.2 | ♦ VH        | F9: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 40      | )m: 50.   | 0 🜲      | VH     | IF3: 56.2 | VHF         | 10: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 30      | )m: 49.   | 0 ≑      | VH     | IF4: 56.2 | VHF         | 11: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 20      | )m: 48.   | D ≑      | VH     | IF5: 56.2 | VHF         | 12: 56.2 | -        |          |             |       |       |
| 17      | 'm: 47.   | 0 ≑      | VH     | IF6: 56.2 | VHF         | 13: 56.2 | <b>+</b> |          |             |       |       |
| 15      | im: 46.   | 5 🜲      |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
| 12      | 2m: 46.   | 0 ≑      |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
| 10      | )m: 43.   | 5 🜲      |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
| 6       | m: 43.    | 0 ≑      |        | Res       | set         |          |          |          |             |       |       |
|         |           |          |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
|         |           |          |        |           |             |          |          |          |             |       |       |
|         | ta basa a | Inco     | Detet  |           | Det 1       |          |          | OK       | Canad       |       | Annte |

- 7. Press the console **Tune** button to <u>on</u>
- 8. You should see *approximately* 10W on the power meter.
- 9. Adjust the **Gain by band** box for 160m to achieve 10W. Do not change in jumps bigger than 1dB!
- 10. Press the console **Tune** button to off
- 11. Go on to the next band and repeat.

## 3.9 Using Puresignal

Puresignal provides an algorithm to correct the non-linearity. It does that by measuring the difference between the *actual* output and the *intended* output, and correcting the TX samples to allow for the difference. This algorithm was designed by Warren Pratt NROV and leads to TX signals 20-30dB "cleaner" than those with no correction. This all happens in the background, once it has been initialised.

Depending on your radio model, you may need a signal coupler to select a sample of your TX signal for the adaptive correction process. More recent radios have included that within the unit. If you use an external linear amplifier, then you will definitely need a suitable coupler (which could be built into your amplifier).

#### 3.9.1 Setting Up Puresignal

- 1. Follow the guidance to set up your microphone, drive, antenna and filter selection for "normal" TX.
- 2. Select the <u>Menu > Linearity</u> form. The Puresignal Control form will be shown.
- 3. Click the **AmpView** button. You will see the AmpView form, ready to show linearity corrections.
- 4. Use the **Drive** slider to select the power level you want to operate at.
- 5. Connect a dummy load with appropriate power rating to your antenna connector (ANT1, unless you have selected a different antenna).
- 6. Click the **DUP** console button to <u>on</u>.
- 7. Click The console display zoom **2X** button

8. Click **Two-tone** to <u>on</u> in the Puresignal window. You will see your TX signal as two tones in the panadapter display area. Puresignal will rapidly adapt the signal to reduce harmonics to much lower values.



- 9. After a few seconds the TX display should be stable. Click **Two-tone** to <u>off</u> to complete the calibration test.
- 10. The **AmpView** button will have updated to show the amplitude and phase behaviour of the amplifier, and the correction that has been made.



## 3.9.2 Operating with Puresignal

Once enabled, Puresignal will automatically apply corrections during transmission. It is important to have your microphone properly adjusted – you need to be getting 0dB speech peaks to drive Puresignal hard enough!

A green box "Feedback" under the panadapter indicates that a good signal level is being received from the feedback path. To its right a green box "Correcting" indicates that corrections are being made.

Inetis v2.6.7 (4/29/19)  $\times$ Me XVTRs CWX Diversity Collapse Spot Linearity RA Equalizer WB PI norv VFO B-RX1 Meter TX Me Tune ტ VFO Sync - 10Hz + RX2 Signal ~ Mic 14.196 38 14.174 470 VFO A B 7.000000 MON TUN -3 dB Rx Ant Save Restore 1 5 TX MOX 14.205 14.210 14,185 14.190 14,195 DUP PS-A 14.200 160 80 60 Master AF: 50 30 40 20 . 15 17 12 10 6 - 🛞 SWL WWV VHF+ RX2 AF: 0 AGC Gain: 83 ۲ Drive: 100 DIGU Center Zoom: 0.5x 1x 2x 4x . . 5.0k 4.4k 3.8k NR ANF 3.3k 2.9k 2.7k Med 🗸 9 ≑ SPLT A > B Panadapter 🗸 Trans mit Profile 2.4k 2.1k 1.8k 1.0k Var 1 Var 2 NB SNB MIC **0**1 6 dE 0 Beat A < B SQL: -150 Default AVG Peak MUT BIN COMP . 1 dB IF->V A <> B ۲ CTUN VOX -40 100 🜲 3000 🚔 RIT 0 XIT 0 Width: 27/07/2019 DEXP RX EQ TX EQ 0 **0** Reset LOC 19:12:45 Shift ( MultiRX 7 TX FL VAC1 VAC2 CPU% 15 0 ≑ High 🛛 300 Low \* Swap

Further calibration is not normally required.

# 4 Console Controls

This section describes the screen controls available to operate your radio using THETIS. The "expanded" view of THETIS provides most controls in an immediately accessible form. In the "collapsed" views many of the controls described in this section aren't visible, or the appearance may have changed; most can be accessed in other ways. The "Classic" view adds several tables to the application menu to access settings. The "Andromeda" view allows many settings to be accessed through a set of buttons at the bottom of the screen, and via additional "popup" screens available via those buttons.

## 4.1 Console Screen Buttons

This section describes the controls available on the primary "Console" screen. Please be aware that the "skins" can alter the appearance, and the text, displayed on the buttons. The guide here has been prepared using the "IK3VIG special" skin. Most controls have "tooltips" which describe their function if the mouse hovers over them.

#### 4.1.1 Master Buttons Group



| Radio On/Off | Turns on/off the connection through the network to the radio, and initiates           |
|--------------|---|
|              | software defined processing.  |
| RX2 On/Off   | Turns on/off the second receiver channel. When selected an addition RX2 Group         |
|              | appears at the bottom of the console.   |
| Monitor      | When selected, TX Audio is replayed to the speakers for monitoring of TX audio        |
|              | quality. The <b>Master AF</b> Gain function sets the volume (see section 4.1.6)       |
| Tune         | When selected, initiates a transmit operation with a steady tone at the power level   |
|              | selected in the setup form (see section 6.5). Note that the TX Meter function is set  |
|              | to the setting assigned in the setup form.  |
| MOX          | When selected, initiates a normal transmit operation at the power level set by the    |
|              | drive control (see section 4.1.6).  |
| Duplex       | When selected, displays the received signal on the display when transmission is       |
|              | active. If not selected, the TX drive signal is displayed.                            |
| PS-A         | When selected, the Puresignal TX linearization function is enabled during             |
|              | transmission.   |
| Quick Record | Activates the "Quick record" function to record a signal for later playback. See      |
|              | section 5.3.  |
| Quick play   | Activates the "Quick replay" function to replay a previously recorded signal - either |
|              | through the receiver to the speakers, or to the transmitter. See section 5.3.         |
|              |   |

These buttons provide on/off controls for a number of critical functions:

#### 4.1.2 VFO Group

| VFO A           |   | └ ALO B            |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| 7.151 857       | VFO Sync Tune - 10Hz +<br>Step:<br>VFO A B 14 030310 Part/Stark | 7.154 785          |
| 40M Ext/Adv SSB | Rx Ant Save Restore 2 5   | TX 40M Ext/Adv SSB |
This group includes three panels: displays for VFO A and B frequency; plus VFO controls in the middle.

### 4.1.2.1 VFO A/B Displays

The tuned frequency and band segment are displayed for each of VFO A and VFO B. The functions assigned to these controls depends on the settings for **RX2**, **MultiRX** and **SPLT** as described below. Additional display information is included in these boxes in "collapsed" display modes.

The VFO selected for TX is indicated by the red "TX" indicator.

### 4.1.2.2 VFO Settings

The central section contains several controls:

| VFO Sync      | When selected, the two VFOs are locked together in frequency. This necessary for    |
|---------------|---|
|               | the "Diversity" feature (see section 5.7).  |
| Tune Step     | This section sets the tuning step. The VFO frequency is increased or decreased by   |
|               | this amount for each tuning event (keyboard press, scroll wheel step or front panel |
|               | encoder step).  |
| VFO Lock      | Two buttons allow the settings for VFO A and VFO B respectively to be locked, to    |
|               | prevent inadvertent tuning.   |
| RX Ant        | If the antenna setup (see section 6.1.7.2) for the current band has different       |
|               | antenna for RX and TX, this button selects whether the receiver is connected to the |
|               | assigned RX antenna or to the TX antenna.   |
| Save, Restore | These controls access the "quick memory" function to allow rapid recall of a        |
|               | setting. The "save" button causes the current frequency, mode and filter for VFO A  |
|               | to be saved to the Quick memory; its frequency is displayed. The "restore" button   |
|               | causes the quick memory setting to be copied back to VFO A.                         |
| Bandstack     | Two numbers display the current bandstack (left) and total number of bandstack      |
|               | memories for the current band (right). Clicking in either displays the bandstack    |
|               | form (see section 5.1).   |

### 4.1.2.3 VFO Settings for RX1, RX2 and RX1 Sub-receiver

The functions of VFO A and VFO B change depending on what combination of **RX2**, **MultiRX** and **SPLIT** are selected. This table indicates which VFO controls those functions.

| RX1           | VFO A controls RX1; TX on RX1 frequency  |  |
|---------------|--|--|
|               | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         +           40M Ext/Adv SSB         IX         Rx Ant         Save         Restore         2         5   |  |
| RX1 + MultiRX | VFO A controls RX1; TX on RX1 frequency; VFO B controls Sub-RX   |  |
|               | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         - 100Hz         +           7.126         205         VFO Sync         Step:         - 100Hz         +           40M         Ext/Adv SSB         IX         Save         Restore         2         5   |  |
| RX1 + RX2     | VFO A controls RX1; TX on RX1 frequency; VFO B controls RX2  |  |
|               | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         +           7.126         205         VFO A         B         14.030310         BandStack         Image: Control of the state         14.245         192           40M         Ext/Adv SSB         Image: Control of the state         Image: Contrel of the state         Image: Contrel of |  |

| RX1 + RX2 +    | VFO A controls RX1; TX on RX1 frequency; VFO B controls RX2;  |
|----------------|---|
| MultiRX        | Sub-RX frequency in VFO A band segment box  |
|                | VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         100Hz         14.245         192           7.105000         TX         Rx Ant         Save         Restore         2         5         TX         20M SSB   |
| RX1 + SPLT     | VFO A controls RX1; TX on VFO B frequency   |
|                | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         100Hz         14.217         14.217         894           40M Ext/Adv SSB         IX         Rx Ant         Save         Restore         2         5         20M Ext/Adv SSB  |
| RX1 + MultiRX  | VFO A controls RX1; VFO B controls both Sub-RX and TX   |
| + SPLT         | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         7.139         206           40M Ext/Adv SSB         TX         Rx Ant         Save         Restore         2         5         40M Ext/Adv SSB  |
| RX1 + RX2 +    | VFO A controls RX1; VFO B controls RX2;   |
| SPLT           | TX frequency in VFO A band segment box  |
|                | VFO A         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         +           7.126         205         VFO Sync         Step:         100Hz         +           VFO         A         B         14.030310         BandStack         14.217         894           7.105000         IX         Rx Ant         Save         Restore         2         5 |
| RX1 + RX2 +    | VFO A controls RX1; VFO B controls RX2;   |
| MultiRX + SPLT | both TX and sub-RX frequency in VFO A band segment box  |
|                | VFO x         VFO Sync         Tune         100Hz         +           VFO 205         VFO xor         Step:         100Hz         +           VFO xor         No         No         No         No           7.105000         X         Rx Ant         Save         Restare         2         Save   |

If the RX1 **multiRX** feature is activated, an additional sub-receiver with similar settings to RX1 is activated. This can be used as an additional receiver.

### 4.1.3 Band Group



This group provides a quick way to select the RX1 operating band. The current band will be indicated by one of the buttons being highlighted.

To change band, simply click the button for the desired new band and the radio will re-tune to that band. It will select the last used frequency, mode and filter setting for that band. Be aware that the antenna selection will be changed according to the per-band antenna settings defined on the setup form (see section 6.1.7.2)

There are 3 sets of buttons available, which can be selected by buttons on the bottom row:

• One set provides access to the HF amateur bands;

- One set provides access to transverter settings to access VHF/UHF/microwave bands. For more information on transverter settings, see section 5.5.
- One set provides access to various short wave bands of interest to Short Wave Listeners.

There are other methods available to change band – for example where these controls are hidden:

- Andromeda provides front-panel controls to step up one band, or step down one band, within the HF amateur bands.
- The "classic" collapsed view optionally presents these buttons at the bottom of the screen
- Andromeda menu buttons can be assigned to step up and down similarly
- An Andromeda menu button allows the band setting popup form to be displayed (see section 5.13.2) which provides similar functionality to this group
- Using PC keyboard keys: by default "M" and "N" step up / down one band respectively.

### 4.1.3.1 Bandstacks

"Bandstacks" provide memories storing several pre-defined settings for quick access to different parts of each band. For example if you want to move quickly between a CW section, a digital modes section and the SSB section of the 20 metre band, you can set up a "bandstack" for each and that rapidly switch between them. Bandstack memories are only available for RX1.

A bandstack memory is a combination of a frequency, an operating mode and a filter setting. In conjunction with the mode-dependent settings (see section 4.1.10) this provides most of the settings likely to be needed in a new part of the band. The VFO group (see section 4.1.2) indicates the number of programmed bandstack memories for the current band, and the most recently selected bandstack.

- 1. To select the next bandstack memory in the current band: press the band button.
- 2. To edit a bandstack memory entry: press the band button until that bandstack memory is selected. Then tuned the radio, change mode and/or change the filter settings. The press the band button again.
- 3. A bandstack form (see section 5.1) provides an ability to edit the bandstack memory settings. Andromeda provides a button to switch between each bandstack memory in the current band.
- 4. An Andromeda menu button allows stepping between bandstack entries for the current band.

#### 4.1.4 Mode Group



This group provides a quick way to select the RX1 operating mode. The current operating mode will be indicated by one of the buttons being highlighted.

To change mode, simply click the button for the desired new mode. The mode will be selected, and the mode-dependent radio settings will be updated according to those selected for the new mode (see section 4.1.10).

The modes available are as follows:

| Mode  | Туре    | Description   |
|-------|---------|---|
| LSB   | Voice   | Lower Sideband suppressed carrier. Typically used below 10MHz.  |
|       | (Phone) |   |
| USB   | Voice   | Upper Sideband suppressed carrier. Typically used above 10MHz.  |
| DSB   | Voice   | Double Sideband suppressed carrier. Not in common use.  |
| AM    | Voice   | Double sideband, with carrier. No longer in common use.   |
| SAM   | Voice   | Double sideband, with carrier. Synchronous tuning to the received carrier.  |
| CWL   | CW      | CW (Morse) in the lower sideband  |
| CWU   | CW      | CW (Morse) in the upper sideband  |
| FM    | Voice   | Narrow band Frequency Modulation; common of VHF & above bands   |
| SPEC  | Digital | Full spectrum mode. Provides access to the full receiver channel bandwidth.   |
| DIG L | Digital | Digital modes, using upper sideband (most commonly used). Provides a filtered digital audio stream to an external digital mode application. |
| DIG U | Digital | Digital modes, using lower sideband (less commonly used). Provides a filtered digital audio stream to an external digital mode application. |
| DRM   | Digital | Digital Radio Mondiale. Provides a filtered digital audio stream to an external application.  |

There are other methods available to change mode – for example where these controls are hidden:

- The "classic" collapsed view optionally presents these buttons at the bottom of the screen
- Andromeda provides front-panel controls to step up or down one mode
- Andromeda menu buttons can be assigned to step up and down similarly
- An Andromeda menu button allows the mode setting popup form to be displayed (see section 5.13.3) which provides similar functionality to this group
- Using PC Keyboard keys. By default "X" and "Z" stepping up / down between modes.

#### 4.1.5 Filter Group

| 5.0k      | 4.4k   | 3.8k   |
|-----------|--------|--------|
| 3.3k      | 2.9k   | 2.7k   |
| 2.4k      | 2.1k   | 1.8k   |
| 1.0k      | Var 1  | Var 2  |
| Width: 🗨  | •      | _      |
| Shift 🔤   |        | Reset  |
| Low -2800 | 🗧 High | -100 🜩 |

This group provides a quick way to select the RX1 receiver bandwidth. The current filter bandwidth will be indicated by one of the buttons being highlighted. The bandwidth offered are mode dependent. To change filter, simply click the button for the desired new bandwidth.

These filters are the principal means by which the receiver selects the station of interest, and rejects the nest one only a few 100Hz away. In a crowded band – for example during a contest – it may be necessary to select a smaller than normal bandwidth to reject interference from an adjacent station.

Through DSP, the filter bandwidths and centre frequencies are fully variable. Two buttons marked **Var 1** and **Var 2** select variable filters: the bandwidth and centre frequency (equivalent to "IF Shift") can be changed to reject interference. Sliders are provided to select centre frequency and bandwidth, or the "low" and "high" cut-off points can be manually edited. The **reset** button will reset the filter centre frequency (but leave bandwidth unchanged).

To observe filter settings, the filter bandwidth is shown in the signal display as a grey vertical band. As the centre and bandwidth are changed, so the grey band is changed and that can be compared with the spectrum activity for the wanted signal and the interfering signal(s).

There are other methods available to change filters – for example where these controls are hidden:

- An Andromeda menu button allows the filter settings popup form to be displayed (see section 5.13.4) which provides similar functionality to this group
- Using PC Keyboard keys. By default "B" and "V" step up / down between filter bandwidths.
- The Odin and Andromeda panels both provide filter "low cut" and "high cut" encoders. These move the lower audio edge and upper audio edge respectively. If you hear a high frequency interfering signal, adjust "high cut". If you hear a low frequency interfering signal, adjust "low cut".

### 4.1.6 Gain Group



| Master AF   | This sets the audio gain for the transmit monitor function and CW sidetone. TX audio is replayed to the speakers when <b>MON</b> is selected. |   |  |  |  |
|-------------|---|---|--|--|--|
| RX1 AF      | Sets RX1 AF ga  | Sets RX1 AF gain  |  |  |  |
| RX2 AF      | Sets RX2 AF Ga  | Sets RX2 AF Gain  |  |  |  |
| AGC Gain    | Sets the AGC t<br>signal level. It  | hreshold level. This is the level above which the AGC reduces the should be set just above the band noise floor and is indicated with a |  |  |  |
|             | green "G" line  | on the display.   |  |  |  |
| Drive       | Sets the TX lev   | el, as a relative value 0-100% of full power.   |  |  |  |
| AGC         | Sets the Autor  | natic Gain Control operating speed. Two time constants are  |  |  |  |
|             | controlled: the normal "decay" time setting the rate at which AGC restores gain   |   |  |  |  |
|             | after a large si  | after a large signal was present; and a "hang" time that prevents gain increase until   |  |  |  |
|             | a certain perio   | a certain period has expired. (There is also a fast decay action after AGC-detected   |  |  |  |
|             | impulses). Valu   | impulses). Values available are as follows:   |  |  |  |
|             | Fixed:  | No AGC action; receiver has constant gain   |  |  |  |
|             | Long:   | Long hang time, long decay time   |  |  |  |
|             | Slow:   | Medium Hang time, medium decay time   |  |  |  |
|             | Medium:   | Medium decay time, no hang  |  |  |  |
|             | Fast:   | Short decay time, no hang   |  |  |  |
|             | Custom:   | The AGC settings are controlled by user-entered parameters in the   |  |  |  |
|             |   | Menu > Setup > DSP > AGC/ALC form   |  |  |  |
| Attenuation | Sets the receiver front-end attenuation. This is adjusted to make sure the A-D  |   |  |  |  |
|             | converters do not overload in strong signal conditions. The settings available will be  |   |  |  |  |
|             | receiver dependent. If your receiver has a 1dB step attenuator, double clicking on  |   |  |  |  |
|             | the text label will change this between "ATT" and "S-ATT"   |   |  |  |  |
|             | ATT: coarse   | step attenuator, with 10dB steps  |  |  |  |

S-ATT: fine stepped attenuator with 1dB steps

SQL The button turns on/off the receiver squelch function. When active, the receiver output is blanked for signals below the set threshold. The squelch slider sets the squelch threshold value

### 4.1.7 VFO Buttons Group

| SPLT A > B   |
|--------------|
| 0 Beat A < B |
| IF->V A <> B |
| RIT 0 XIT 0  |
| 0 💠 0 ≑      |

These buttons control VFO operation.

| SPLT      | This button activates "split frequency" TX / RX operation.   |
|-----------|--|
|           | If RX2 is disabled: VFO A will be used for RX, and VFO B will be used for TX   |
|           | If RX2 is enabled: VFO A provides both. The RX frequency is displayed as normal;   |
|           | the TX frequency is displayed in the band segment display.   |
| A > B     | Copies the VFO A frequency to VFO B  |
| A < B     | Copies the VFO B frequency to VFO A  |
| A <> B    | Swaps the VFO A and B frequencies  |
| Zero Beat | Centres the VFO onto the largest signal within the RX passband. This is likely to be useful for CW and possibly data modes, but not voice modes.   |
| IF -> V   | If the IF filter has been shifted: this button clears the filter shift, and retunes the VFO so that the "unshifted" IF filter is at the same frequency as it was before. Useful if IF shift had been used to follow a moving signal. |
| RIT       | Receiver Independent Tuning: these controls shift the receiver up or down in frequency from the VFO setting, leaving the TX unchanged. The RIT button turn RIT on/off; The <b>0</b> button clears the RIT offset.                    |
| VIT       | Transmitter Indonendent Tuning: these controls shift the transmitter up or down in   |

Transmitter Independent Tuning: these controls shift the transmitter up or down in XIT frequency from the VFO setting, leaving the RX unchanged. The XIT button turn XIT on/off; The **0** button clears the XIT offset.

### 4.1.8 RX1 DSP Group

| NR  | ANF  |
|-----|------|
| NB2 | SNB  |
| MUT | BIN  |
| MNF | +MNF |

NR Activates noise reduction, to minimise random noise. This attempts to reduce the noise in the channel while preserving signal content.

- Noise reduction inactive Unlit:
- NR lit: Activates the LMS noise reduction algorithm
- NR2 lit: Activates the spectral noise reduction algorithm

NB Activates the wideband noise blanker, to remove impulse interference. This processes impulses within the full Thetis bandwidth.

- Unlit: Noise Blanker inactive
- NB lit: Noise Blanker active, and sets receiver input to zero during impulse
- NB2 lit: Noise Blanker active, and estimates the signal the receiver would have seen during an impulse.

- MUT Mutes the RX1 audio feed to the radio's speakers and headphones. (Note that this does <u>not</u> mute audio to a VAC channel, eg to PC speakers).
- MNF Activates the manual notch frequency. Notch frequencies are entered in the <u>Menu ></u> <u>Setup > DSP > MNF</u> form (see section 6.4) or by using the **+MNF** button. This should be used as a last resort!
- ANF Activates the Automatic Notch Filter. This filter will attempt to notch out interfering carrier signals within the receiver passband.
- SNB Activates the spectral Noise Blanker. The SNB detects impulse interference and attempts to estimate the "correct" receiver signal during the presence of the impulse.
- BIN Turns on/off Binaural mode. Binaural mode is a tuning aid for CW reception with stereo speakers or headphones. In this mode higher frequencies move to the right of the stereo field and lower frequencies to the left. A signal will be correctly tuned in the centre of the stereo field.

## 4.1.9 MultiRX Group



| Vol (left)   | This duplicates the RX1 AF gain control.  |
|--------------|---|
| Vol (right)  | Sets the Sub receiver AF gain, when it is enabled.  |
| Pan (top)    | Moves the RX1 signal to the left or right of the stereo audio channel; when in the  |
|              | centre, equal signals go to left and right channels.  |
| Pan (bottom) | Moves the Sub receiver signal to the left or right of the stereo channel  |
| MultiRX      | Enables the sub receiver. This provides a second receiver channel using the RX1 RF channel and A-D converter. If RX2 is disabled, VFO B sets its frequency. If RX2 is |
|              | enabled, the frequency is set in the band segment box for VFO A.  |
| Swap         | Swaps the left/right settings of the PAN controls. A signal that had been only in the left audio channel would be only in the right audio channel.                    |

## 4.1.10 Mode Dependent Group

Four sets of controls can be shown here, depending on the currently selected operating mode. The correct set is selected and displayed automatically. These settings provide controls specific to that type of mode.

### 4.1.10.1 Voice



This panel is selected automatically for "voice" modes other than FM.

| Mic       | Enables the radio microphone input. (when unlit the microphone is muted)                                     |
|-----------|--|
| Mic Gain  | Adjusts the microphone gain. A 20dB boost is available on the setup form if sufficient gain isn't available. |
| СОМР      | Selects the speech compressor.   |
| Comp Gain | Sets the gain value for the speech compressor.   |
| VOX       | Enables Voice Operated Transmit.   |

| Vox         | Sets the audio threshold at which VOX activates the TX.                                     |
|-------------|---|
| Threshold   |   |
| DEXP        | Enables the downward Expander. Only available when VOX is selected.                         |
| Filter Low  | Sets the low edge of the AM/SSB TX filter (typically 300Hz)                                 |
| Filter high | Sets the upper edge of edge of the AM/SSB TX filter (typically 2700Hz-3000Hz)               |
| RX EQ       | Activates or deactivates the receiver audio band equaliser (see section 5.4)                |
| TX EQ       | Activates or deactivates the transmitter audio band equaliser (see section 5.4)             |
| TX FL       | If selected, shows the TX filter bandwidth on the main display                              |
| Transmit    | This combo box shows the current selected profile, and allows a new profile to be           |
| Profile     | selected. The profile consists of all of the TX audio chain settings; this allows different |
|             | settings for different kinds of operation, eg for different bands, for contests or for      |
|             | "ragchewing".   |

### 4.1.10.2 CW

| Speed: 25 WPM      | APF Tune: 0              |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
|                    | Bandwidth: 150 🕘         |
| 🖌 lambic           | RX1 Gain: 0 🌑            |
| ✓ Sidetone         | CW Break-In              |
| Show TX<br>CW Freq | OFF Delay (ms): 300 🖨    |
| Show CW Zero Lin   | e Pitch Freq (Hz): 600 🚔 |

This panel is selected automatically for CW modes (CWL, CWU).

| Speed                | This sets the keyer speed, in words per minute  |
|----------------------|---|
| Pitch freq           | Sets the frequency expected for CW audio. This sets the offset from carrier for TX operation.   |
| lambic               | When ticked, the keyer generates timed dots and dashes triggered by an lambic keyer. When unticked a "straight" key is assumed.                   |
| Sidetone             | Turns on/off audio sidetone for CW (either normal key or iambic keyer)  |
| Show TX CW<br>Freq   | If ticked, shows a yellow marker in the main display for the actual TX frequency (this may be different from RX frequency because if RIT or XIT). |
| Show CW<br>Zero line | If ticked, shows a yellow marker in the main display for the centre RX frequency.   |

## Audio peaking filter section

| Enable<br>(marked RX1<br>or RX2) | Activates the APF: this is a narrow peak filter but not "brick wall". The amplitude will be greatest at centre frequency, but mis-tuned signals will be heard at lower amplitudes. |
|----------------------------------|--|
|                                  | There are three APF algorithms – one for each of RX1, RX2, Sub RX. Settings for the others are available on the <u>Menu &gt; Setup &gt; DSP &gt; Audio</u> form                    |
| Tune                             | Sets the APF centre frequency, relative to the sidetone frequency  |
| Bandwidth                        | Sets the bandwidth of the APF, in Hz   |
| Gain                             | Sets the gain (amplitude enhancement) of the APD   |
|                                  |  |

### CW Break-in section

Off/Semi/QSK This button selects between 3 break-in modes:

- Off The TX/RX state is manually controlled
- Semi TX selected immediately when the key is pressed. RX will be re-enabled a short period after the keyer is released. The delay time (ms) is adjustable.
- QSK TX selected immediately when the key is pressed. RX is re-enabled immediately after the key is released.

(note that not all hardware supports QSK, and the firmware must be recent; QSK mode will not be selected if the correct settings are not detected)

### 4.1.10.3 Digital

| VAC1 RXGain: -11      | Sample Rate |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| VAC1 TX Gain: 6       | Chnis / IQ  |
| TX Profile: Default 🗸 |             |

VAC RX gain Adjusts the gain of the selected VAC RX audio channel

(note that VAC1 is selected for digital operation unless RX2 is active AND VAC2 is enables AND VFOB is selected for TX)

- VAC TX Gain Adjusts the gain of the selected VAC TX audio channel
- Sample Rate Sets the sample rate for the VAC audio channel
- Chnls/IQ Selects the VAC channel to be mono or stereo

TransmitThis combo box shows the current selected profile, and allows a new profile to beProfileselected. The profile consists of all of the TX audio chain settings; this allows different<br/>settings for different kinds of operation, eg for different bands, for contests or for<br/>"ragchewing".



TransmitSets the profile settings used for TX. It will be worth creating a unique profile for FM<br/>operation.Profileoperation.Mic GainAdjusts the mic gain used for FM operationDeviationSets the deviation in use: 2.5 or 5KHz. 2.5KHz is more common nowadays!CTCSSActivates a TX CTCSS tone, with user settable frequency. Use for privacy or keying<br/>repeaters. (Note received RX CTCSS can be removed – see Menu > Setup > DSP > FM<br/>form)RPTRSets offset frequency between RX and TX. Activated by the buttons below.

| -       | Sets a TX frequency below RX  |
|---------|---|
| Simplex | Sets TX frequency same as RX frequency  |
| +       | Sets TX frequency to be above the RX frequency  |
| Rev     | Swaps the RX and RX frequencies (a quick way to listen on repeater input for example)   |
| Memory  | Activates use of a stored frequency from one of the memories (see memory form, section 5.2). A list of memories is provided, with up/down buttons to step between them. |

### 4.1.11 RX2 Group



The RX2 group is at the bottom of the screen. If a second receiver is not selected, this group is hidden. The group provides the same controls for RX2 as the other controls provide for RX1, with a few minor changes.

The RX2 band is selected using a combo box at the left hand side of the group. Bandstacks are not available for RX2.

SD Enables the Stereo Diversity feature. In this mode RX2 and RX1 are both tuned by VFO A. You should ensure that RX1 audio is presented to the left audio channel and RX2 to the right.



These two buttons turn on / off the two Virtual Audio Connection<sup>1</sup> (VAC) channels. These can be used to connect to an audio device (e.g. a sound card) or to an external program via 3<sup>rd</sup> party software. VAC1 is for RX1; VAC2 is for RX2.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> Originally "Virtual audio Cable" but Thetis VAC ports can be used for many PC audio connections.



## 4.1.13 Display Group

This is the main operating display for the radio.

| Visual<br>Display | Provides a display of the signal seen through the receiver, or the TX signal when transmitting.   |
|-------------------|---|
|                   | If RX2 is active, this display will be split into two halves: RX1 above, RX2 below, with the same scales.   |
| Zoom              | Allows the display to be zoomed into a part of the band covered. If the slider is at the extreme left, the full band provided by the radio is displayed. If it is moved to the right, the display zooms into a smaller segment of the band. |
|                   | If the sample rate is set to 384KHz: with the slider at the left, 384KHz span is available.   |
| Zoom<br>buttons   | Zoom the display to preset amounts. This has the same effect as moving the zoom slider to that position.  |
| Pan               | Pans the displayed part of the band across the bandwidth available from the receiver. If the zoom slider is fully to the left, this will have no effect.  |
| Center            | Centres the displayed part to the middle of the band.   |
| Display<br>mode   | Chooses the display mode selected for RX1.  |
| AVG               | Time averages the amplitude at each point of the display. The averaging parameters are set in <u>Menu &gt; Setup &gt; Display &gt; RX1</u> (or RX2)   |
| PEAK              | "Peak holds" the display: this provides persistence to spot fleeting signals  |
| CTUN              | Activates "Click Tune". When active, clicking or dragging the display doesn't pan the display but instead moves the tuned signal away from the centre. This is useful if you want the view of activity to stay "as is".                     |

| Several display modes are available; "Panafall" and "Panadapter" will be the most useful for normal operations: |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Spectrum  | Displays the spectrum (amplitude vs frequency) within the receiver passband   |  |
|   | -3300 -3000 -2500 -2000 -1500 -1000 -500<br>55<br>66<br>77<br>75<br>85<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96<br>96                      |  |
| Panadapter  | Displays amplitude vs frequency of the whole RX band provided by the receiver. The  |  |
| <b>6</b>  | The definition see spectrum activity and mid signals of interest.   |  |
| Scope   | This displays amplitude vs time for the RX passband. This is most likely to be useful for monitoring TX audio to see the peal-to-average ratio.         |  |
|   |   |  |
| Scope 2 Provides two identical amplitude vs time displays.  |   |  |
|   |   |  |
| Phase   | This displays the signal within the receiver passband as an Argand diagram showing phase around a unit circle. Useful for setup and receiver debugging. |  |
|   |   |  |

| Phase 2   | This shows an Argand diagram but I can't tell what of!  |  |  |
|-----------|---|--|--|
|           |   |  |  |
| Waterfall | This displays frequency (horizontal) covering the full band provided by the radio vs time (vertically, most recent at the top). Each successive updates provide a new row of pixels at the top; the display scrolls down. Amplitude is displayed as a colour with higher amplitudes being brighter. This shows activity "running downwards": for example the signal three quarters of the way across the display is an SSB signal.  |  |  |
|           | 9647.1Hz 1.6sec 7.124.338.MHz 42.2Hz 71.248m 7.133.943.MHz  |  |  |
| Histogram | This shows the spectrum view within the RX passband. It is coloured according to activity: red shows very recent activity, green shows peaks that are slightly older and blue the average background.   |  |  |
|           | -33600 -3000 -22600 -1500 -1600 -500<br>-50<br>-50<br>-50<br>-50<br>-50<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-75<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80<br>-80  |  |  |
| Panafall  | This is potentially the most useful view. It combines a panadapter covering the full<br>band provided by the receiver, together with a waterfall display. This shows<br>immediate spectrum activity (top) and an indication of activity over the last few<br>seconds (bottom).  |  |  |
|           | 7       120       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,170         60       70       7,160       7,170         90       90       90       90         130       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,170         7,120       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,160       7,170         7,120       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,160       7,170         7,120       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,160       7,170         7,120       7,130       7,140       7,150       7,160       7,170         8263       3Hz       2,3sec       7,138       811 MHz       6225 HHz       -811 HBm       7,153 306 MHz |  |  |



### 4.1.14 Multimeter Group



This group contains the multi-function "multimeter" analogue display, a "current value" box, and combo boxes to choose meter mode for each of receive and transmit.

RX1 Meter The RX1 multimeter can be selected from the following options:

| Signal  | RX1 Peak reading S meter. The period for which peaks are held is set on the <u>Setup &gt; Display &gt; General</u> form.                  |
|---------|---|
| Sig Avg | RX1 Average reading S meter. The period for which the signal level is averaged is set on the <u>Setup &gt; Display &gt; General</u> form. |
| ADC L   | RX1 ADC peak (expressed in dB relative to full scale)   |
| ADC R   | RX1 ADC peak (expressed in dB relative to full scale)   |
| ADC2 L  | RX2 ADC peak (expressed in dB relative to full scale)   |
| ADC2 R  | RX2 ADC peak (expressed in dB relative to full scale)   |
| Off     | (May be useful to reduce CPU utilisation)   |
|         |   |

(note that the RX2 meter has the same options; Signal & Sig Avg display RX2 S meter values; the ADC displays for both receivers available in both meters)

TX Meter The TX multimeter can be selected from the following options:

| Fwd Pwr  | Estimate of transmitter forward output power in watts            |
|----------|--|
| Ref Pwr  | Estimate of transmitter reverse power in watts                   |
| SWR      | Estimate of SWR  |
| Mic      | Peak microphone audio level (dBV)                                |
| Fwd SWR  | (same as "Fwd Pwr")  |
| EQ       | Peak post-equaliser audio level (dBV)                            |
| Leveler  | Peak post-amplitude leveller audio signal level (dBV)            |
| Lev Gain | Displays the amplitude leveller gain (dB)                        |
| CFC      | Peak post-CFC (continuous frequency compressor) audio level (dB) |
| CFC Comp | Displays the CFC gain (dB)                                       |
| COMP     | Displays post-speech processor & CESSB audio level (dBV)**       |
| ALC      | Displays post-ALC audio level (dBV)**                            |
| ALC Comp | Displays the ALC gain (dB)                                       |
| Off      | (May be useful to reduce CPU utilisation)                        |

The estimates of forward and reverse power are radio dependent.

\*\* COMP and ALC values can be set in the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u> form to be peak or instantaneous values using **use peak meter readings for TX COMP and ALC**)

(Note that the TX meter setting used in TUNE mode is defined in the <u>Menu > Setup</u> <u>Transmit</u> form)

#### 4.1.15 Status Bar

The status bar is a recent addition by Richie MW0LGE. It provides options to resize the display; it displays CPU usage and other information including date and time.

💻 1024 x 609 👘 5% 🎌 R2 🕍 2

18:12:19 utc Mon 10 Aug 2020 19:12:19 loc 🔐

The receiver and transmitter antennas can be set using the appropriate icons.

| Setup     | Displays the setup form (see section 6)                               |  |
|-----------|---|--|
| Memory    | Displays the memory form ( see section 5.2)                           |  |
| Wave      | Displays the audio record/replay form (see section 5.3)               |  |
| Equalizer | Displays the graphic equalizer form (see section 5.4)                 |  |
| XVTRs     | Displays the Transverters form (see section 5.5)                      |  |
| CWX       | Displays the CW transmit form (see section 5.6)                       |  |
| Diversity | Displays the Diversity form (see section 5.7)                         |  |
| Collapse  | Changes the display to one of the "collapsed" views (see section 2.2) |  |
| Spot      | Displays the DX spotting form (see section 5.8)                       |  |

## 4.2 Main Menu commands

| Linearity   | Displays the Puresignal form (see section 5.9)  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| RA  | Displays the Radio Astronomy utility (see section 5.10)   |  |  |
| WB  | Displays the wideband display form (see section 5.11)   |  |  |
| PI  | Displays the RF Paths form (see section 5.12)   |  |  |
| If the "Collapsed" display is selected additional menus become available: |   |  |  |
| Expand  | Restores the display to the normal "expanded" console view  |  |  |
| Display<br>Controls   | Controls the top/bottom b<br>Top Controls<br>Band controls<br>Mode controls<br>Andromeda Top Controls<br>Andromeda Button Bar | bars in the "collapsed" displays<br>Shows the "classic" top display bar<br>Shows the band buttons below the display<br>Shows the mode buttons below the display<br>Shows the "Andromeda" top bar<br>Shows the "Andromeda" menu buttons |  |
| DSP   | Allows several DSP modes and display modes to be selected   |  |  |
| Band  | Allows the band to be selected from the menu  |  |  |
| Mode  | Allows the operating mode to be selected from the menu  |  |  |
| Filter  | Allows the filter bandwidth to be selected from the menu  |  |  |
| RX2   | Allows the band / mode / filter / DSP settings for RX2 to be selected   |  |  |

## 4.3 Andromeda Menu Bar

In the "Andromeda" collapsed view, this bar shows a row of 8 buttons. These provide a set of configurable commands in a row of 8 menu entries. Buttons can call up a different row, allowing very capable menu structures to be created.

- A button marked "menu" will call up a different menu row when pressed.
- When pressed, buttons will change a setting or call up a form.
- If highlighted, the button indicated the current "on/off" state of something.
- Button text can be changed to indicate something e.g. whether it is controlling RX1 or RX2.

For example: the menu above shows the "quick menu";

- RX1 NR is enabled, and pressing the second button would step to RX2 NR2 selected.
- Buttons are also available for RX1 NB, SNF, ANF, AGC and Attenuation.
- Pressing each button will select the next option for that control. Attenuation is stepped in 6dB steps for example.

If there is no menu activity for more than 10 seconds, the first "Quick" menu will be re-selected.

## 4.4 Keyboard and Mouse Actions

The PC keyboard and mouse can be used to control the program.

In the main display, the mouse scroll wheel will move the tuned frequency up or down by one step. If the cursor is positioned over a digit in the VFO group, it will move that digit up or down by one step. The keyboard functions can be configured in the <u>Menu > Setup > Keyboard</u> form. The initial settings are:

| Q, A  | Step up/down the MHz frequency digit               |
|-------|--|
| W, S  | Step up/down the 100KHz frequency digit            |
| E, D  | Step up/down the 10KHz frequency digit             |
| R, F  | Step up/down the 1KHz frequency digit              |
| T, G  | Step up/down the 100Hz frequency digit             |
| Y, H  | Step up/down the 10Hz frequency digit              |
| U, J  | Step up/down the 1Hz frequency digit               |
| M, N  | Step up/down the current band                      |
| B, V  | Step up/down the current selected filter bandwidth |
| X, Z  | Step up/down the current mode                      |
| 0, I  | Step up/down the current RIT frequency offset      |
| [, P  | Step up/down the current XIT frequency offset      |
| Space | Press-to-talk (MOX)                                |
| bar   |  |

## 4.5 Database Reset

Occasionally it is recommended to carry out a database reset. This resets all settings to initial, "safe" values. There are two occasions when this could be needed: after a major update, which has changed too many settings to be individually described; and if you have edited settings in a way that turned out to be inappropriate, and you cannot recover.

To prepare for this consider the following actions to preserve changes that you want to reinstate:

- Make screenshots of important or complex settings, for instance amplifier calibration values.
- Use <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit > Export Current Profile</u> to export important and/or complex transmit profiles.
- <u>Use Menu > Setup > CAT > Configure MIDI > Manage Mappings > Export Mappings</u> to export MIDI settings.

You can now carry out the database reset. Open the <u>Menu > Setup</u> form and click the **Database Reset** button at bottom left. It will issue a warning; click **Yes** to proceed.

| Reset Da | tabase?  | × |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|          | This will close the program, make a copy of the current<br>database to the DB_Archive folder and reset the active<br>database<br>the next time PowerSDR is launched. |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | Are you sure you want to reset the database?   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | <u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

To restore any saved settings:

- For each transmit profile exported it can be imported using <u>Menu > Setup</u> Import Database. It will require a separate import cycle for each profile.
- MIDI settings can be imported using the "Import Mappings" function that was adjacent to the "Export Mappings" function referred to above.

# **5** Other Forms

## **5.1 Bandstacks**

| ļļ,                        | Ba                    | ind                  | Sta                              | ack   |   | _                              |                      |                                     |                                 | $\times$         |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|---|---|--------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| Le<br>Ri<br>WI<br>CT<br>AE | ft (<br>gh<br>he<br>R | Clia<br>el (<br>L +  | ck o<br>lick<br>Clic<br>Ri<br>Ba | on line<br>con li<br>k to E<br>ght C<br>ndSta | e to<br>ne<br>)ele<br>lick              | char<br>to LO<br>ete a<br>on B | ge<br>Ck<br>Ba<br>AN | e frequ<br>(/UNL<br>ndsta<br>ID but | iency<br>OCK<br>ck Er<br>ton to | r.<br>ntry.<br>D |
| 1<br>3<br>4<br>5           | :                     | 7.<br>7.<br>7.<br>7. | .00<br>.01<br>.04<br>.09         | 5000<br>5000<br>0000<br>0000                  | ::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::: |                                | : : :                |                                     |                                 |                  |
| ٥                          | Always On Top Sort    |                      |                                  |   |   |                                |                      |                                     |                                 |                  |

This form allows bandstacks for each band to be edited. It provides instructions at the top of the form.

## 5.2 Memory Form

| S Memory Interf                     | ace                   |             |                          |                 |                  |               |  |  |  |   |                       | _                                      |      | $\times$ |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|--|--|--|---|-----------------------|--|------|----------|
| Group                               | RX Freq               | Name        | DSP Mode                 | Schedule Start  | Duration         | Recording     | Weekly   | Monthly  | Comments   | Tune Step   | RPTR                  | RPTR Offset                            | CTCS | SS (     |
|                                     | or neg                |             | Donnode                  |                 | Carbon           | ricciding     | recey  | mora a ry  | Commerce   |   |                       | The first state                        | Cite |          |
| 4                                   |                       |             |                          |                 |                  |               | _  |  |  |   |                       |  |      |          |
| Schedule Start Date<br>02 July 2019 | e for selected  <br>9 | Memory      | Start Time (<br>18:32:34 | ocal) Set <- Du | uration ->Remain | ning F        | requency: (r   | nhz)   | Group:   |   |                       | Name:                                  |      |          |
| Schedule Weel                       | kly 🗌 Sch             | edule Month | ly                       | R               | ecord on Sched   | lule <u>C</u> | comments:  |  |  |   |                       |  |      |          |
| Add                                 | Сору                  | Delete      |                          | Ope             | en Rec Folder    | ose after     | Highlight a n<br>You can Dra<br>Right Click o<br>Double Left | nemory by a<br>ng a file or l<br>on a highlig<br>Click to ch | a single Left Click<br>URL directy onto<br>hted Row to go to<br>ange the Flex to t | on a Row.<br>the highlighte<br>o the Hyperlini<br>that Memory F | d Row to<br>k or open | save a Hyperlin<br>the File.<br>y/mode | k.   |          |

This form allows menu settings to be stored, edited and recalled. When **Add** is clicked the current console settings are copied to a new menu entry. Many of the settings are stored, and can subsequently be edited.

This is also used from the FM mode settings (see section 4.1.10.4) to select a new FM memory in the same way that a VHF/UHF FM transceiver would do the same. It is a good idea to set the tuning step size to the local channel step size (e.g. 12.5KHz for the 2m band in Europe) before creating the menu entry.

## 5.3 Audio Record/Replay

| Wave File Controls  | _                   |              |
|---|---------------------|--------------|
| Options   |                     |              |
| Playback  |                     | Record       |
| Currently Playing   |                     | Record       |
| Stop Flay Pause Prev Next   |                     | TX Gain (dB) |
| Playlist  |                     | 0            |
| Add Remove Loop   |                     | 1.1.1.1.1.1  |
|   |                     | Quick Rec    |
|   |                     | Quick Play   |
|   |                     |              |
|   |                     |              |
| NOTE: In Receive, playback goes to the input of th<br>In Transmit, playback goes to the input of the transm | e receiv<br>nitter. | er.          |

The **wave** form allows signals to be recorded, then replayed later. Signals can be received (off-air) signals or TX signals.

Received signals can be stored as receiver ADC samples; when replayed, they are replayed through the receiver processing chain. This could allow different DSP settings to be used to recover an unintelligible signal for example. Alternatively the processed RX audio can be recorded, consuming less disk space. Similarly, TX signals can be recorded as microphone audio or the result of the entire TX chain can be stored. They can then be replayed through the transmitter, as a voice keyer.

"Quick Record" and "Quick play" can be accessed as single button pressed from the expanded display form.

Options for waveform record & replay can be selected by clicking the form's **Options** menu item. This brings up the options form below:

| I Wave Record Options   | - 🗆 X  |
|---|--|
| When Receiving, Record<br>O Receiver Input I/Q<br>Receiver Output Audio | Bit Depth<br>③ 32-Bit IEEE Floats *<br>③ 32-Bit Signed PCM<br>④ 24-Bit Signed PCM<br>④ 16-Bit Signed PCM   |
| When Transmitting, Record<br>MIC Audio<br>Transmitter Output I/Q        | Sample Rate  48000  0.8  Control  Contr |

## 5.4 Equaliser Form



This form provides a 3 or 10 band graphic equaliser. It allows the RX and TX audio paths to be separately equalised (i.e. gain adjusted vs frequency). This is particularly important for TX, as different microphones have very different frequency response characteristics.

The equaliser interpolates between the amplitudes at each frequency point, to avoid sudden jumps at each new point. The amplitudes are not flat in between the frequency points.

| 5.5 | Transverters |  |
|-----|--------------|--|
| _   |              |  |

| I XVTR S | etup        |                 |                    |        |                 |        |                 |        |             |        |              |     |         | _     |               | ×             |
|----------|-------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|--------|-------------|--------|--------------|-----|---------|-------|---------------|---------------|
| Enabled  | Band Button | Button Text     | LO Offset<br>(MHz) |        | LO Err<br>(kHz) | or     | Begin Freq (MHz | :)     | End Freq (M | /Hz)   | RX G<br>(dB) | ain | RX Only | Power | XVTR<br>RF TX | Disable<br>PA |
|          | 0           | 0               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | A<br>T | 0.000000    | *      | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 1           | 1               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | ÷.     | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 2           | 2               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *      | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 3           | 3               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | A Y    | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 4           | 4               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | ÷.     | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 5           | 5               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | A<br>T | 0.000000    | *      | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 6           | 6               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | - A    | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 7           | 7               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *      | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 8           | 8               | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *<br>* | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 9           | 9               | 0.0                | *<br>* | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 10          | 10              | 0.0                | *<br>* | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 11          | 11              | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | ÷.     | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 12          | 12              | 0.0                | *<br>* | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | 13          | 13              | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🜲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          |             |                 | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | *      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          |             |                 | 0.0                | *      | 0.000           | +      | 0.000000        | *<br>* | 0.000000    | *<br>* | 0.0          | *   |         | 100 🌲 | $\checkmark$  | $\checkmark$  |
|          | Use XV      | TR PWR for Tune | B                  |        |                 |        |                 |        |             |        |              |     |         |       |               |               |

This form allows the radio to be used as an HF exciter to feed a transverter, which converts the signal to another band. When enabled, this form adds entries to the **VHF** band button panel so that transverters can be rapidly controlled.

## 5.6 CW Transmit

| CW Memories and Keyboard            |                                    | ×                |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| Stop (Esc) Key Notes                | 22 🔹 3 🔹<br>Speed WPM Repeat Delay | Always On Top    |
| 1 #### test de w5sxd/b el29ep.\$\$" | 4 k5sdr de w5sxd (                 | 7 ?              |
| 2 cq cq test w5sxd test             | 5 cq cq cq de w5sxd w5sxd w5sxd +k | 8 agn            |
| 3 5nn stx                           | 6 The quick brown fox jumped ove   | 9 n6vs           |
| Pause (F1) Clear (F2)               | Keyboard                           | 32   *   space ~ |
|                                     |                                    |                  |
|                                     |                                    |                  |
|                                     |                                    |                  |

This form allows commonly used messages to be recorded, then replayed as CW on demand. Also text can be typed in and transmitted.

The **Notes** button brings up a set of instructions.

| Phasing Control |                            | -   |                | $\times$                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------|---|----------------|---------------------------|
|                 | shift<br>+45<br>180<br>-45 | Receiver Source<br>Rx1 + Rx2<br>Receiver 1<br>Receiver 2<br>Reference Source<br>Gain<br>Receiver 1<br>Receiver 2<br>Receiver 2<br>Lock Gain | Phase<br>24.20 | l <b>ed</b><br>↓<br>Phase |
|                 |                            |   |                |                           |

Antenna Diversity allows a receiver equipped with dual A-D converters to implement beamforming. This requires two fully independent inputs, one through each A-D converter, from two antennas. This can be used to enhance a weak signal, or to steer a null towards an interference source. Diversity improves the received signal for RX1, but is independent of the operation of RX2. RX2 can be used on a different band if desired; the only constraint is if it is on a different band, its RX filters will need to be disabled.

To use antenna diversity:

- 1. Select the <u>Menu > Diversity</u> menu item to open the Diversity form.
- 2. Set **Receiver source** to <u>RX1 + RX2</u>
- 3. Set reference Source to <u>RX1</u>
- 4. To minimise interference:
  - a. Use the mouse to select the "dot" on the display
  - b. Click and hold the mouse, and drag the dot around the outer circle on the display
  - c. You should see the panadapter noise floor move up and down as you drag
  - d. Find the angle giving minimum noise floor
  - e. Keeping the mouse at that angle, move in towards the centre until you get minimum noise
  - f. If you aren't able to get a minimum: Set **reference Source** to <u>RX2</u> and try again
- 5. To maximise strength of one signal:
  - a. Use the mouse to select the "dot" on the display
  - b. Click and hold the mouse, and drag the dot around the outer circle on the display
  - c. Find the angle giving maximum signal on the panadapter for the wanted signal
  - d. Keeping the mouse at that angle, move in towards the centre until you get maximum signal
  - e. If you aren't able to get a maximum: Set reference Source to RX2 and try again
- 6. To turn diversity off, Click **Enabled** and it will turn to a red **Disabled** button.

## 5.8 DX Spotting form

| 🛄 DX / SWL Spotter  |  |  |   | - C   | ı ×  |
|---|--|--|---|---|--|
| VOCAP Override  |  |  |   |   |  |
| k1rfi.com:7300<br>ve7cc.net23<br>telnetreversebeacon.net7000  | <ul> <li>Add or Edit DX Cluster's ve7cc.net:23 or k1fi.cor set Mode, or Right Click Mode and Move Antenn QRZ page or Shift key to Antenna using DDUtilPA Click on Red Dots + CT</li> </ul> | or reverse Beacon telnet address<br>m:7300 or telnet reversebeacon no<br>on spot to open QRZ page.Left C<br>a using DDUtilPAN: Left Click on I<br>see SpottersPAN: Left Click on F<br>N: Left Click on Memory spot + C<br>RL key to go to Freq and Mode of | and port# and your o<br>et:7000Left Click on<br>lick on Spot BEAM H<br>Left side of DX Spot<br>Right side of DX Spot<br>TRL key to set Freq<br>f DX station | :all sign.Like<br>Spot to go to<br>1EADING to<br>+ CTRL key<br>t + CTRL key<br>& Mode.PAN | :<br>) Freq and<br>Freq &<br>to open<br>y to Move<br>v: Left |
| DX         de         W5ZE:         14239.0         KM4KWZ           DX         de         W9YK:         7212.0         NSMIG           DX         de         KC2DPF:         14295.0         KL7SB           DX         de         AALK:         1837.0         K2AX           DX         de         WS7X:         28435.0         LUSFLM           DX         de         KE42UN:         14335.0         K7ER           DX         de         NQOW:         14345.0         NA1KW | great op Alaska<br>LSB<br>POTA K-2640  | 2100Z<br>2059Z<br>2059Z<br>2058Z<br>2058Z<br>2058Z<br>2058Z<br>2057Z   | ssb<br>ssb<br>ssb<br>ssb<br>ssb<br>ssb<br>ssb   | : 0°<br>: 0°<br>: 0°<br>: 0°<br>: 0°<br>: 0°  | :00 ∧<br>:01<br>:02<br>:02<br>:02<br>:02<br>:03 ♥            |
| Status of DX Cluster         Spotting       ✓ Spot CW         ✓ Spot Phone         North American Spotters only       ✓ Spot Digital  | <ul> <li>✓ SunTracking</li> <li>✓ GrayLine Track</li> <li>✓ Special PanaFall Mode</li> <li>✓ VOACAP Contour</li> </ul>   | Map Country Time Sy<br>✓ Map Calls Use W<br>✓ Map just Band 3 🚖 0<br>Map just Pan  | nc Status of<br>Off<br>WV HF<br>O Tick Spot S   | SWL Spotter   | SWL list   |
| Exclude North American Spotters     Spot DX Pause Beacon Chil   | Track Beam   | Map Beam <sup>®</sup> Setu<br>MEMORIES to Pan Your<br>n 1 😫  | up->CAT Control->D<br>Lat and Long (+/- o   | DUtil , for R<br>Jeg) Your  | otor Control<br>Call sign<br>rCall                           |

This form is provided to allow the radio to be quickly set to the appropriate settings for a station identified in a DX Cluster. DX cluster websites can be accessed, and the frequency / mode / beam heading can be established automatically. The form has its own instructions.

- 1. Select a DX Cluster Server.
- 2. Enter your Latitude and Longitude in Decimal and Decimal Degrees

LAT LON DD.DD -DDD.DD (41.57 -88.03) (+ Latitude for North, - for South) (- Longitude for West, + for East)

- 3. Enter your call sign.
- 4. Press "Spot DX" button to connect to DX Cluster. Spots should soon appear below.
- 5. When a DX spot is received, it will be listed above and appear on the panadapter according to Frequency.
- 6. If you right click on a listing, your browser will open the QRZ.com page for that call sign.
- 7. If you double click on a listing, Thetis will QSY to that frequency and mode.



- 8. If you right click then left click on the vertical line to the left of a DX call sign, Thetis will QSY to that frequency.
- 9. The initial placement of a DX Spot is near the top of the panadapter. As time passes, the Spot will be migrate lower on the display. Therefore new spots are at the top of the display and older spots will be lower.

## **5.9** Puresignal

Puresignal is a technology to linearise the transmitter's power amplifier. When Puresignal is enabled, THETIS applies dynamic corrections to ensure that the output signal from the amplifier is as close as possible to that originated by the software. Puresignal has three possible display forms:

#### 5.9.1 Puresignal Control

| PureSignal 2.0 –                          |       |            |  |  |         |    | × |
|---|-------|------------|--|--|---------|----|---|
| Two-tone Single Cal AmpView Advanced Save |       |            |  |  | Restore | OF | F |
| Feedback                                  | Level | Correcting |  |  |         |    |   |

 Feedback Level
 Correcting

 This is the standard display.

 Two-tone
 Perform a thorough two-tone test

 Single Cal
 Perform a quick single calibration

| I wo-tone      | Perform a thorough two-tone test  |
|----------------|---|
| Single Cal     | Perform a quick single calibration  |
| AmpView        | Shows the Puresignal Amplitude display (section 5.9.3 below)                        |
| Advanced       | Calls up the advanced display (below)   |
| Save           | Saves the current correction settings to a file                                     |
| Restore        | Restores correction settings from a previously saved file                           |
| Off            | Turns Puresignal off  |
| Feedback Level | Lights Green when a valid feedback signal has been received. If this is not green   |
|                | during a test or operation, sufficient signal is not been fed back via the coupler. |
| Correcting     | Lights green when linearization corrections are being made                          |

## 5.9.2 Puresignal Advanced Control



The advanced display provides more information and controls. It is recommended that these be left unchanged unless you know what you are changing!



## 5.9.3 Puresignal Amplitude Display

The AmpView Display shows the measured gain and phase characteristics of the analogue amplifier chain and the gain and phase correction being applied by PureSignal.

## 5.10 Radio Astronomy

(With thanks to Joe K5SO for this description)

The RA option is intended to operate essentially as a "strip chart recorder" function for those interested in observing and recording signals received by the HPSDR as a function of time.

The signals displayed are the signal-level values that PowerSDR/Thetis sends to the S-meter, not raw data from the radio. In particular, the signals shown in the RA option are not the instantaneous IQ values being received from the radio, they are instead signals that have been subjected to the digital signal processing routines of PowerSDR/Thetis that generate the S-meter readings shown on the main displays of those software programs.

There are several controls implemented that are similar to those you might find on conventional strip chart recorders and a few controls that you don't find on them. These controls are described briefly below, referring to the attached JPEG image of the RA display that becomes visible when the RA option is selected in PowerSDR or Thetis. The RA display is shown below:



| Start              | This button in the Acquire data box of the display initiates and halts acquisition |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|                    | and display of data from the radio. Each time data is started old data is          |  |  |  |  |
|                    | discarded and is lost unless it was saved earlier using the "write data file"      |  |  |  |  |
|                    | button described later.  |  |  |  |  |
| mSec between       | This allows the user to select a value of the number of milliseconds that should   |  |  |  |  |
| measurements       | exist between signal-strength measurements, in the range 50-1000 in                |  |  |  |  |
|                    | increments of 1 mSec.  |  |  |  |  |
| # of               | This box allows the user to select how many points are to be used to average       |  |  |  |  |
| measurements to    | together for each point displayed. The range is 1-2000 points.                     |  |  |  |  |
| average per point  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Display            | This box allows the user to select what signals are to be plotted on the RA        |  |  |  |  |
|                    | graph.   |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Both plots signals independently from Rx 1 and Rx2 in different pen                |  |  |  |  |
|                    | colors so they can be distinguished from each other                                |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Rx1 only plots only the signal from Rx1  |  |  |  |  |
|                    | Rx2 only plots only the signal from Rx2  |  |  |  |  |
| # of averaged      | This box shows the user how many data points have been written to file as the      |  |  |  |  |
| points collected / | data acquisition proceeds.   |  |  |  |  |
| saved              |  |  |  |  |  |
| read data file     | Opens a dialog box in which the user may specify a data file to read and display   |  |  |  |  |
|                    | using the RA option. The default filename is "RA_data.csv".                        |  |  |  |  |
| write data file    | Opens a dialog box in which the user may specify a filename to use to write the    |  |  |  |  |
|                    | data to disk, the default filename is "RA_data.csv".                               |  |  |  |  |
| elapsed time       | Displays how long the current data acquisition has been running, in seconds. It    |  |  |  |  |
| (secs)             | resets to zero when a new "Start" is initiated                                     |  |  |  |  |
| Rx1 signal (dBm)   | Displays the instantaneous signal strength of RX1 in dBm                           |  |  |  |  |
| Rx2 signal (dBm)   | Displays the instantaneous signal strength of RX2 in dBm                           |  |  |  |  |

| Y-axis | Contains controls to allow the user to set and/or select various modes and<br>limits of the y-axis of the graphics plot including, mode of operation<br>(logarithmic (dBm) or linear (arb. units)), automatic or manual scaling of the y-<br>axis, and max/min limits for the display when in manual scaling mode. In dBm<br>mode the max/min limits are -140 to 1000 for the Ymax limits and -150 to |
|--------|---|
|        | achievable with HPSDR but that is the Ymax limit for the graph.   |
| X-axis | Contains controls to allow the user to specify an x-axis range for the graphic display with Xmin values ranging from 0-99999 seconds and Xmax values ranging from 1-100000 seconds.   |

Joe K5SO created this display and offers the following observations on its use:

I have usefully employed the RA option personally in the past to measure sun noise, while using UHF/microwave to HF down converters, for system testing. Also, I have usefully employed the RA option during EME operations to monitor moon noise (thermal emission from the moon) to ensure my tracking is optimum during EME QSOs. Others might use the RA option to monitor signal levels directly on the HF bands. One could use the option to obtain a graphical display of the nulling effect of the Diversity option in PowerSDR/Thetis, although I've never actually done that personally. I'm sure there are numerous other uses for the RA option but these four are what come to my mind at the moment without thinking too hard about it.



## 5.11 Wideband display

This display provides an amplitude vs frequency display of the whole spectrum seen by the software defined radio. The amateur bands are marked by red vertical bands.

## 5.12 RF Paths Form



This form provides an illustration of the signal path in use for the current selected radio and operating mode.

## 5.13 Andromeda Popup Forms

This section lists the popup forms that have been created for the Andromeda mode. These are designed to allow settings to be activated while using a 7" touchscreen display. Most have larger controls than used elsewhere so they can be "touch" operated (although a mouse can of course still be used).



This form is intended for use with the "Andromeda" collapsed view, where most of the controls are hidden. It duplicates several of the analogue settings available through the "expanded" display. Many of these controls are available as physical controls on the Andromeda front panel; this form may be useful to see what position the control is set to.

### 5.13.2 Band Form

| 🖳 set RX1 Band |     |       | _ |       | × |
|----------------|-----|-------|---|-------|---|
|                |     |       | ٦ |       |   |
| 160            | 80  | 60    |   |       |   |
|                |     |       |   |       |   |
| 40             | 30  | 20    |   |       |   |
|                |     |       |   |       |   |
| 17             | 15  | 12    |   |       |   |
|                |     |       |   |       |   |
| 10             | 6   | LF MF |   |       |   |
|                |     |       |   |       |   |
| VHF+           | WWV | SWL   |   | Close |   |
|                |     |       | ] |       |   |

This form provides access to the full set of "band" buttons. They have the same functions as the console buttons described in section 4.1.3. The Andromeda front panel provides "band up" and "band down" for quick band changes.

| 5.13.3 Mode Form     |      |      |   |       |  |  |
|----------------------|------|------|---|-------|--|--|
| 🖳 set RX1 Mode — 🗆 🗙 |      |      |   |       |  |  |
|                      |      |      | ٦ |       |  |  |
| LSB                  | USB  | DSB  |   |       |  |  |
| CWL                  | CWU  | FM   |   |       |  |  |
| AM                   | SAM  | SPEC |   |       |  |  |
| DIGL                 | DIGU | DRM  |   | Close |  |  |

This form provides access to the full set of "mode" buttons. They have the same functions as the console buttons described in section 4.1.4. The Andromeda front panel provides "mode up" and "mode down" for quick mode changes.

### 5.13.4 Filter Form

| 💀 set RX1 Filter |       |       | - |       | × |
|------------------|-------|-------|---|-------|---|
|                  |       |       | 1 |       |   |
| 5.0k             | 4.4k  | 3.8k  |   |       |   |
|                  |       |       |   |       |   |
| 3.3k             | 2.9k  | 2.7k  |   |       |   |
|                  |       |       |   |       |   |
| 2.4k             | 2.1k  | 1.8k  |   |       |   |
|                  |       |       | I |       |   |
| 1.0k             | Var 1 | Var 2 |   | Close |   |
|                  |       |       |   |       |   |

This form provides access to the set of "filter" buttons. They have the same functions as the console buttons described in section 4.1.5. The Andromeda front panel provides "filter up" and "filter down" for quick filter changes. It also provides rotary controls for filter high cut and filter low cut: these select the **VAR 1** filter, then adjust the upper and lower edges of the audio passband respectively.

#### 5.13.5 Display Settings Form



This form is intended for use in the Andromeda view, and provides access to the settings related to display and metering.

| RX1 Meter        | Sets the function of the multimeter display for RX1     |
|------------------|---|
| RX2 Meter        | Sets the function of the multimeter display for RX2     |
| TX Meter         | Sets the function of the multimeter display for TX mode |
| RX1 Display mode | Sets the function of the main operating display for RX1 |
| RX2 Display mode | Sets the function of the main operating display for RX2 |
| RX1 Avg          | Sets the display averaging on or off for RX1            |
| RX1 Peak         | Sets the display peak hold on or off for RX1            |
| RX2 Avg          | Sets the display averaging on or off for RX2            |
| RX2 Peak         | Sets the display peak hold on or off for RX2            |

5.13.6 VFO settings form



This form provides the "VFO Tune Step" setting. This sets the frequency increment used for mouse, keyboard or front panel tune operations; see section 4.1.2.

### 5.13.7 Mode Dependent Settings

Four forms can be shown under "mode dependent settings": depending on the kind of operating mode currently selected. They are identical to those on the expanded display (see section 4.1.10).



# **6 THETIS Setup Form**

THETIS has a large number of user configurable settings, and many of these are located within a multi-tabbed SETUP form. For many PC programs, the Setup form isn't used much after initial settings have been established; with THETIS, you can expect to use this form often.

# 6.1 General settings Tabs

| Seneral Audio Display DSP | Transmit PA Settings Appea     | arance Keyboard CAT Control Tests    |  |  |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| H/W Select F/W Set ADC    | Options Calibration OC Control | I Ant/Filters Filters RX2 Navigation |  |  |
| Radio Model               | Hardware Options               | Network Settings                     |  |  |
| ANAN-200D V               | Mic 🖲 Tip 🔘 Ring               | Reuse Last IP Address                |  |  |
|                           | Bias O Off  On                 | Enable Static IP Address             |  |  |
|                           | PTT  Off On                    | Network Watchdog                     |  |  |
|                           |                                | Protocol 1                           |  |  |
|                           | Alex                           |                                      |  |  |
|                           |                                | 192 - 168 - 0 - 34 - •               |  |  |
|                           |                                | 10 + 10 + 30 + 110 + )               |  |  |
|                           | Region                         |                                      |  |  |
|                           | United Kingdom $$              |                                      |  |  |
|                           | Extended                       | Select IP                            |  |  |
|                           |                                | ANAN Address                         |  |  |
| Receive Only              |                                | IP: 192.168.0.20 Ver: 0.0            |  |  |
|                           |                                | MAC: ID: Hermes                      |  |  |

This tab allows your radio hardware to be selected.

| Radio Model      | Select your ra   | Select your radio hardware from the list available.                          |  |  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Hardware Options | Consult our ra   | Consult our radio manual regarding the options you have available.           |  |  |  |  |
|                  | Mic S  | Selects the microphone audio connection to be the tip or ring                |  |  |  |  |
|                  | C  | connection of a 3.5mm stereo jack plug                                       |  |  |  |  |
|                  | Bias Enables a bias supply for "Electret" microphones on the mic |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | (  | connection   |  |  |  |  |
|                  | PTT Enables the other connector on the jack plug to be a PTT inp |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | transmits when grounded.   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | Alex S   | Selects whether a standard set of "Alex" filters are connected               |  |  |  |  |
|                  | (  | (normally an internal part of your radio)                                    |  |  |  |  |
| Region           | Selects the IT   | U region: used to display the correct band plans                             |  |  |  |  |
|                  | Extended   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Receive Only     | If ticked, the radio will not enter TX mode                      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Network Settings | Selects IP add   | Selects IP addresses, if you have multiple radios available. Normally THETIS |  |  |  |  |
|                  | will find the ra   | will find the radio on the network.  |  |  |  |  |

| Protocol1    | Selects which interface protocol Thetis should use. Your radio hardware have an FPGA image supporting either Protocol1 or Protocol2, but not b   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|              | <ul> <li>Protocol1 Selects the older Protocol1 interface to your radio.</li> <li>Protocol2 Selects the newer Protocol2 interface to your radio. Protocol2 allows higher speed data transfer to and from our radio hardware.</li> <li>Auto Select Thetis will auto select which protocol to use.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |  |
| ANAN address | Displays the IP address for the radio it has most recently found on the network  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 6.1.2 F/W Set Tab

| 🛄 Setup                     |                             |   |                                       | -          |               |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|------------|---------------|
| General Audio Display DS    | P Transmit PA Sett          | ings Appearance   | Keyboard C                            | AT Control | Tests         |
| H/W Select F/W Set ADC      | Options Calibration         | OC Control Ant/   | /Filters Apollo                       | Filters RX | (2 Navigation |
| RX1 Sample Rate<br>384000 ~ | RX2 Sample Rate<br>384000 ∨ | ANAN Option<br>Dither En<br>Random I<br>MaxRXFree<br>LED Mirror | ıs<br>abled<br>Enabled<br>q: 61.44 .€ | 6 7        | 8 9 10        |
|                             |                             |   |                                       |            |               |
| Reset Database Import Da    | tabase Export Da            | tabase  | ОК                                    | Cancel     | Apply         |

This tab sets the sample rate used for each receiver, and consequently the bandwidth that will be available for the panadapter displays.

| RX1 Sample Rate | Sets the sample rate for the first receiver. The larger the sample rate, the higher the PC CPU utilisation – you will need a reasonably modern PC to use rates above 384000.                             |
|-----------------|--|
| RX2 Sample Rate | Sets the sample rate for the first receiver. The larger the sample rate, the higher the PC CPU utilisation – you will need a reasonably modern PC to use rates above 384000.                             |
| Dither enabled  | When ticked, a small jitter in the sample clock is performed in the A-D converter. This will increase the noise floor slightly but reduce line spurious signal levels                                    |
| Random enabled  | When ticked, the data inside the ADC is "hashed" to reduce digital noise to the ADC. It is "unhashed" in the FPGA giving the same identical data. You may see a small noise reduction if this is ticked. |
| Max RX Freq     | Sets the upper frequency to which the RX can be tuned.   |

#### 6.1.3 ADC Tab

| 🛄 Setup       |              |            |               |            |             |         | _          |            |
|---------------|--------------|------------|---------------|------------|-------------|---------|------------|------------|
| General Audi  | io Display   | DSP Transm | nit PA Settin | ngs Appear | ance Keyb   | oard C  | AT Control | Tests      |
| H/W Select    | F/W Set Al   | OC Options | Calibration   | OC Control | Ant/Filters | Filters | RX2        | Navigation |
| Protocol 2    | 2 ADC assign | ments      |               |            |             |         |            |            |
| DDC0          | DDC1         | DDC2       | DDC3          | DDC4       | DDC         | 5       | DDC6       |            |
| ADC0          |              | ADC0       |               | ADC        | 0 💿 AE      | DC0     | ADC0       | Peset To   |
| O ADC1        | ADC1         | O ADC1     | ADC1          |            |             | DC1     | O ADC1     | Default    |
| Protocol      | 1 ADC assign | ments      |               |            |             |         |            |            |
| DDC0          | DDC1         | DDC2       | DDC3          | DDC4       | DDC         | 5       | DDC6       | Decette    |
| ADC0          |              | O ADC0     | ADC0          | ADC        | 0 💿 AE      | DC0     | ADC0       | Default    |
| ⊖ ADC1        | ADC1         | ADC1       | O ADC1        |            | 1 () AE     | DC1     | O ADC1     |            |
| Reset Databas | se Import    | Database   | Export Dat    | abase      | OK          |         | Cancel     | Apply      |

Sets which A-D converter is connected to which downconverter in the FPGA. There are separate settings for Protocol 1 and Protocol 2, because the FPGA configuration is quite different. Do not change these settings unless you know why you are doing it! Reset buttons are provided to restore the "default" values.

- For the newer Protocol 2: the settings available are hardware dependent
- For the older Protocol 1: only Angelia and Orion DSP boards support these settings.

| neral Audio Display DSP Transmit PAS   | Settings Appearance Keyboard      | CAT Control Tests          |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| /W Select F/W Set ADC Options Calibrat | ion OC Control Ant/Filters Filt   | ers RX2 Navigation         |  |  |  |  |
| Options-1 Options-2                    |                                   |                            |  |  |  |  |
| Options                                | Miscellaneous                     | Custom Title Text          |  |  |  |  |
|  | Always On Top                     |                            |  |  |  |  |
|  | Disable ToolTips                  |                            |  |  |  |  |
| Band Change                            | Snap Click Tune                   | ANAN Step Attenuator       |  |  |  |  |
| BX Delay                               | Zero Beat - RIT                   | 0                          |  |  |  |  |
|  | Mouse Tune Step                   | Enable Attenuator          |  |  |  |  |
| MOX Delay 15 🖨                         | Wheel Tunes<br>VEOB (red x-bairs) | Keyboard                   |  |  |  |  |
| RF Delay 10 🚔                          | Show CT Filter                    | Easthle Sherteute          |  |  |  |  |
|  | Show CT H Line                    |                            |  |  |  |  |
| PTT Delay 0                            | ClickTune Drag                    | Quick QSY                  |  |  |  |  |
| CW Delay                               | Reverse Wheel                     | Click Tune / Filter Offset |  |  |  |  |
| Key-Up (mS) 10 🖨                       | Wheel Tunes<br>Outside Spectral   | DIGU (Hz): 1500 🖨          |  |  |  |  |
| Key-Down (mS) 7                        | Sync RIT/XIT                      | DIGL (Hz): 2210            |  |  |  |  |
|  | Shift zoom modifier               | Process Priority           |  |  |  |  |
|  | Reverse                           | Nomal                      |  |  |  |  |
|  |                                   | Noma                       |  |  |  |  |

#### 6.1.4 **Options Tab**

This form has many general options for THETIS

| Disable PTT                  | Disables the PTT input pins to the radio MIC connector                      |
|------------------------------|---|
| All mode Pic PTT             | If ticked, the PTT input on the MIC connector works for all modes. If       |
|                              | unticked, it activates TX only when in voice modes.                         |
| Disable Split on band change | Disables a band SPLIT operation of the band is changed. (re-enable it       |
|                              | after tuning to correct new frequency if required)                          |
| RX Delay                     | Delay (ms) before RX re-enabled after MOX released at end of TX             |
| MOX delay                    | Delay (ms) after carrier has ramped to zero before MOX released at          |
| in on delay                  | end of TX   |
| RF Delay                     | Delay (ms) after TX initiated before carrier ramps up                       |
| PTT Delay                    | Sets a PTT hang time (ms) after PTT released before TX deasserted.          |
| CW key-up delay              | Delay (ms) between CW carrier ramped down and MOX released                  |
| CW key-down delay            | Delay (ms) after key down before carrier enabled for CW/                    |
| Process Priority             | Sets the process priority that THETIS runs at in Windows                    |
|                              |   |
|                              | Adds a custom string to the title bar                                       |
| Always on top                | If ticked, THETIS is always the topmost window                              |
| Disable ToolTips             | Disable "helper" strings when the mouse hovers over controls                |
| Snap click Tune              | When ticked, Click tune is snapped to the nearest tune step                 |
| Zero beat-RIT                | When clicked, zero beat uses RIT instead of moving the VFO tune             |
|                              | frequency; leaving TX frequency unchanged.                                  |
| Mouse Tune Step              | When clicked the middle mouse button changes the tune step                  |
| Wheel Tunes – VFO B          | When checked, the mouse wheel tunes VFO B when red cross-hairs              |
|                              | active (when SPLIT or MultiRX are active)                                   |
| Show CT Filter               | Displays the receive filter as a grey vertical bar in Click Tune mode       |
|                              | (this allows you to see exactly where the receiver will be placed)          |
| Show CT H line               | Displays horizontal line in click tune mode                                 |
| Click Tune Drag              | Enables Click Tune and Drag mode  |
| Reverse Wheel                | Reverses the direction of the mouse wheel                                   |
| Wheel tunes outside          | When ticked, a mouse wheel adjustment anywhere on the Thetis                |
| spectral                     | console will cause VFO tuning   |
| Sync RIT/XIT                 | When ticked, RIT and XIT are both adjusted by a change to either of         |
|                              | them.   |
| Shift zoom modifier          | When ticked, holding down SHIFT will not cause the display to               |
|                              | recentre when it is zoomed.   |
| Reverse                      | The opposite - holding down SHIFT <b>will</b> cause the display to recentre |
|                              | when it is zoomed.  |
| Anan Sten Attenuator         | When ticked, the 0-31dB step attenuator is enabled if available. The        |
|                              | edit how sets the attenuation to be used (double clicking in the <b>ATT</b> |
|                              | control in the main console also turns this on)                             |
| Keyboard Enable Shortcuts    | If unticked, the local keyboard commands will be disabled                   |
| Keyboard Quick OSV           | When enables, the local Reyboard commands will directly edit the VEO        |
|                              | frequency   |
| Click Tupo / filtor offecto  | Enters a frequency offset for click tuning when in DIC L or DIC U           |
|                              | modes   |
|                              | moues.  |
|                              |   |
| Options-2                    | inis tab has the settings for a MOX timer. When enabled this will           |
|                              | cancel MOX after a preset amount of time.                                   |

### 6.1.5 Calibration Tab

| Setup  |   |                    | -                              |               |
|--|---|--------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| General Audio Display DSP  | Transmit PA Settings Appea  | rance Keyboard     | CAT Control                    | Tests         |
| H/W Select F/W Set ADC 0   | Options Calibration OC Control  | Ant/Filters Apo    | ollo Filters R                 | X2 Navigation |
| Freq Cal<br>Frequency: 10.00000 (*)<br>Larger FFT Sizes and/or Lower<br>Sampling Rates give increased<br>accuracy.<br>Start<br>HPSDR Freq Cal Diagnostic<br>Correction Factor<br>1.0000000 (*) | Level Cal<br>Frequency: 10.000000<br>Level (dBm): 70 (*)<br>Start<br>Rx1 6m LNA: 13.0 (*) | TX Displa<br>TX Di | y Cal<br>isplay<br>Offset: 0.0 | •             |
| Reset Reset Database Import Databa   | se Export Database  | ОК                 | Cancel                         | Apply         |

Allows calibration constants to be entered, and calibration processes initiated.

| Frequency Cal     | Allows the absolute<br>high quality referen             | e frequencies displayed by Thetis to be calibrated against a nce (e.g. a WWV transmission). |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|                   | Frequency   | Enter the Frequency (MHz) of the reference input  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                   | Start   | Start the calibration cycle   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Level Cal         | Allows the absolute<br>high quality referen             | e amplitudes displayed by Thetis to be calibrated against a nce (e.g. a signal generator).  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                   | Frequency   | Enter the Frequency (MHz) of the reference input  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                   | Start   | Start the calibration cycle   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                   | RX1 6m LNA  | Sets the gain (dB) of the 6 metre band low noise preamp                                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| HPSDR Freq Cal    | Correction Factor                                       | correction factor for frequency errors  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Diagnostic        | Reset   | resets the correction factor to 1.0   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| TX Display Offset | Display Offset Sets an offset in dB for TX level values |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 6.1.6 OC Control Tab

| 🛄 Setup  |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    | _           |         |    | ×          |
|----------|-------|------|-----|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|------|-------|--------|-----|------|---------|------|-----------|--------|----|-------------|---------|----|------------|
| General  | Aud   | lio  | Dis | splay | / [   | SP   | 1     | Trans | mit  | P     | A Se   | tin | gs   | Appeara | ance | Keyb      | oard   | CA | T Contro    | I Tes   | ts |            |
| H/W Se   | lect  | F/   | W S | iet   | AD    | С    | Opt   | tions | 0    | Calib | ratior | 1   | OC   | Control | Ant/ | Filters   | Apol   | lo | Filters     | RX2     | Ν  | lavigation |
| HF       | VH    | F    | S١  | ٧L    |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
|          |       | .116 | Re  | ceiv  | e P   | ins  |       | .11   | 16 1 | Tran  | smit   | Pi  | ns   |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| Band     | 1     | 2    | 3   | 4 5   | 5 6   | 7    |       | 1 2   | 3    | 4     | 5      | 6   | 7    |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 160m     |       | 7    | 7   | 10    |       | i n  |       |       |      |       | П.     | -   | -    |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 80m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 60m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 40m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 30m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 20m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 17m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 15m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 12m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 10m      |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 6m       |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| 2m       |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
|          |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      | - Solit F | Pins - |    |             |         |    |            |
|          |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           | anbla  |    |             | 2 Calit |    |            |
|          | Ext C | ontr | ol  |       | H     | ercu | les / | -mp   |      | н     | F Re   | set |      |         |      |           | lable  |    | <b>Q</b> 4x | o opin  |    |            |
|          |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    | ⊖ 3x        | 4 Split |    |            |
|          |       |      |     |       |       |      |       |       |      |       |        |     |      |         |      |           |        |    |             |         |    |            |
| Reset Da | ataba | se   |     | Imp   | ort ( | Data | base  |       |      | Exp   | ort D  | ata | abas | e       |      | ОК        |        |    | Cance       | I       |    | Apply      |

Controls the 7 open collector digital outputs. Where ticked, the output will be asserted (like a switch to ground) on a band-by-band basis. Different settings available for RX and TX. These can be used to control external devices: for example to indicate the frequency band to remote antennas, linear amplifiers or antenna tuners.

### 6.1.7 Ant/Filters Tab

| Setup             |                           |                |                    | -              |            |
|-------------------|---------------------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|------------|
| General Audio Dis | splay DSP Transmit PAS    | ettings Appear | ance Keyboard      | CAT Control Te | sts        |
| H/W Select F/W S  | et ADC Options Calibratio | on OC Control  | Ant/Filters Apollo | Filters RX2    | Navigation |
| Antenna HPF/LPF   |                           |                |                    |                |            |
| ByPass            | HPF                       | Active         | LF                 | <u>PF</u>      |            |
| 1.5 MHz           | 1.800000 ≑ 6.499999       | to o           | 0.000000           | 2.500000 🖨     | 160m       |
| 6.5 MHz           | 6.500000 🜩 9.499999       | <b>t</b> o o   | 2.500001 🚖         | 5.000000 🚖     | 80m        |
| 9.5 MHz           | 9.500000 🜲 12.999999      | • •            | 5.000001 🜩         | 8.000000 🚖     | 60/40m     |
| 13 MHz            | 13.000000 🚖 19.999999     | € o o          | 8.000001 🚖         | 16.500000 🖨    | 30/20m     |
| 20 MHz            | 20.000000 🜩 49.999999     | <b>e</b> o o   | 16.500001 🜲        | 24.000000 🖨    | 17/15m     |
| 6m BPF/LNA        | 50.000000 🖨 61.440000     | <b>€</b> o o   | 24.000001 🚔        | 35.600000 🖨    | 12/10m     |
| Disable 6m LNA    | ByPass/55 MHz HF          | <b>FO</b>      | 35.600001 🜲        | 61.440000 🖨    | 6m/ByPas   |
| RX TX             | HPF ByPass on TX          | 0              | 6m/ByPa            | ass on RX      |            |
|                   |                           |                |                    |                |            |
|                   |                           |                |                    |                |            |
| Reset Database    | Import Database Export    | Database       | OK                 | Cancel         | Apply      |

The filters available depend on your radio model. THETIS is aware of the filter configurations, and if you have selected the correct radio type then the filters should be selected correctly for each band. The settings shown on the filters form will depend on the radio type.
#### 6.1.7.2 Antenna Tab

| Setup        |             |          |         |              |             |                                       |        | -         | C                     | X             |
|--------------|-------------|----------|---------|--------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|--------|-----------|-----------------------|---------------|
| General Au   | dio Display | y DSF    | Trans   | mit PA Setti | ings Appear | ance Keyb                             | oard C | AT Contro | Tests                 | 3             |
| H/W Select   | F/W Set     | ADC      | Options | Calibration  | OC Control  | Ant/Filters                           | Apollo | Filters   | RX2                   | Navigatio     |
| Antenna      | HPF/LPF     |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
| Antenna C    | ontrol      |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
| Rece         | ive 1.0     | 2        |         |              | Transm      | <u>nit</u>                            |        | An        | tenna Co              | ontrol        |
| Band         | 1 2         | 3        | EXIZ EX | IT XVIR      | Band        | 123                                   |        | SWR P     | rotection             |               |
| 160m         | $\odot$     | 0        |         |              | 160m        | $\odot \bigcirc \bigcirc$             |        |           | -<br>Fnable P         | rotection     |
| 80m          | 00          | 00       |         |              | 80m         | $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ |        |           | N                     |               |
| 60m          | 00          | 00       |         |              | 60m         | $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ |        |           | Jisable (<br>Pwr <35) | on iune<br>∧/ |
| 40m          |             |          | HH      |              | 40m         |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
| 30m          |             |          | HH      |              | 30m         |                                       |        |           | ATT on T              | x             |
| 20m          |             |          | HH      |              | 20m         |                                       |        | ATT       | 21 🔺                  | 1             |
| 15m          | Ő           | õõ –     | H       | i H          | 15m         | $\tilde{\odot}$                       |        | ALL       | JI 🖣                  |               |
| 12m          | ŏŏ          | ŐŐ       |         | j 🗖          | 12m         | ÕÕÕ                                   |        | B         | YPASS                 | on Tx         |
| 10m          | 00          | ÕÕ       |         |              | 10m         | $\overline{0}$                        |        |           | xt 2 on 1             | Гх            |
| 6m           | $\odot$     | 0        |         |              | 6m          | $\odot \bigcirc \bigcirc$             |        |           | vt 1 on 1             | Γ <b>ν</b>    |
| Do Not       | TX 🗹        |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           |                       | <b>^</b>      |
|              |             |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           | isable H              | IF PA         |
|              |             |          | 🗌 Disa  | ble BYPASS   |             |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
|              |             |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
|              |             |          |         |              |             |                                       |        |           |                       |               |
| Reset Datah: | ase Imn     | ort Data | ahase   | Export Da    | tahase      | OK                                    |        | Cance     | 4                     | Apply         |
| 10001 00100  | 100         | 011 0 01 |         | Exportou     |             | 0.0                                   |        | Canoc     |                       | CPP1)         |

This form chooses which antenna is used for which band. Consult your radio manual for the exact paths available.

| Antenna Control | If not selected, the antenna control section is greyed out and the radio will use |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | RX1 for all bands.  |
| Enable SWR      | When enabled a high VSWR condition will cause the radio to cease transmitting     |
| protection      |   |
| Disable on Tune | Disables SWR protection during tuning, when the tune power level is less than     |
| pwr < 35W       | 35W. In this condition a high VSWR is less likely to cause damage.                |
| ATT on TX       | Sets the attenuation applied to the receiver path during transmit.                |
| BYPASS on TX    | Select BYPASS during TX: to be used when an external PA feedback connection       |
|                 | to the Bypass connector is used with ANAN100D/200D with rev24 PA board            |
|                 | (This is radio specific)  |
| Ext 2 on TX     | Selects RX1 to use the Ext 2 input during TX (e.g. for a Puresignal coupler)      |
| Ext 1 on TX     | Selects RX1 to use the Ext 1 input during TX (e.g. for a Puresignal coupler)      |
| Disable HF PA   | Disables an external PA   |
| Disable Bypass  | Disables Bypass relay when Ext1, 2, XVTR ports selected, when used with           |
|                 | ANAN100D/200D with rev24 PA (This is radio specific)                              |

The RX and TX antennas are shown in the status bar. It is also possible to select ANT1, ANT2 or ANT3 from the status bar.

#### 6.1.8 Apollo/Andromeda Tab

This tab is only displayed if your radio supports the settings provided.

#### 6.1.8.1 Apollo Tab

| General      | Audio  | Displa    | y DSP | Transm  | it PA Setti | ngs Appear | ance Keyb   | oard | CAT Co | ntrol   | Tests |   |
|--------------|--------|-----------|-------|---------|-------------|------------|-------------|------|--------|---------|-------|---|
| H/W Se       | lect   | F/W Set   | ADC   | Options | Calibration | OC Control | Ant/Filters | Andr | omeda  | Filters | RX2   | • |
| Apollo       | ATU    | Amp       |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
| Apoll        | o Cont | rol       |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              | Enabl  | e Filters |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
| $\checkmark$ | Enabl  | e Tuner   |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         |             |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |
|              |        |           |       |         | 5           |            |             |      |        |         |       |   |

Applies settings specific to the APOLLO RF unit.

#### 6.1.8.2 ATU Tab

| General | Audio      | Display | DSP          | Transm  | nit PA Setti | ngs App  | arance  | Keybo    | ard CAT  | Control   | Tests  |        |
|---------|------------|---------|--------------|---------|--------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|-----------|--------|--------|
| H/W Sel | lect F/V   | V Set   | ADC          | Options | Calibration  | OC Contr | ol Ant/ | /Filters | Andromed | a Filters | RX2    | 4      |
| Apollo  | ATU        | Amp     |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
| Aries   | ATU Con    | trol    |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
| A       | ntenna     |         | 1            |         | 2            | 3        |         |          |          | Enabl     | le CAT |        |
| A       | TU Enabl   | ed      | $\checkmark$ | ]       |              | 2        | 2       |          |          | Port: No  | one    | $\sim$ |
| St      | tored Solu | utions  | Era          | se      | Erase        | Era      | ise     | -        |          |           |        |        |
| Fi      | irmware \  | /ersion | -            |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
|         |            |         |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
|         |            |         |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
|         |            |         |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
|         |            |         |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |
|         |            |         |              |         |              |          |         |          |          |           |        |        |

#### Applies settings specific to the ARIES Integrated ATU.

| Port        | Selects the COM port for connection to the ARIES ATU                       |
|-------------|--|
| Enable CAT  | When checked, a connection is established                                  |
| ATU Enabled | When checked, the ATU is enabled for that that TX antenna output. There is |
| buttons     | one box for each possible TX antenna.                                      |

| Stored solutions<br>ERASE buttons | When clicked, the ATU stored tuning solutions for that TX antenna output are erased. This would be appropriate if the antenna connected to that output is changed. There is one box for each possible TX antenna. |
|-----------------------------------|---|
|                                   | A message to the right displays progress of the erase (which may take a few seconds)  |
|                                   |   |
| Firmware Version                  | Displays the hardware and software version of the Arduino controlling the ARIES   |
|                                   | ATU.  |

#### 6.1.8.3 Amp Tab

| 🛄 Setup  |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        | -       |       | ×     |
|----------|------------|------------|----------|---------|--------------|---------|---------|---------|------|--------|---------|-------|-------|
| General  | Audio      | Display    | y DSP    | Transr  | nit PA Setti | ngs App | earance | Keybo   | oard | CATCo  | ontrol  | Tests |       |
| H/W Se   | lect F/    | W Set      | ADC      | Options | Calibration  | OC Cont | ol Ant/ | Filters | And  | romeda | Filters | RX2   | 4 >   |
| Apollo   | ATU        | Amp        | ]        |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
| Gany     | mede Ar    | nolifier C | ontrol   |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
| Ampl     | ifter Stat | hin .      | ontrol   |         |              |         |         | -       |      |        |         |       |       |
| Anp      |            | 105 -      |          |         |              | Ena     | ble CAI |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          | R       | eset         | Port:   | Vone    | $\sim$  |      |        |         |       |       |
| Firm     | vare Ve    | rsion -    |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
|          |            |            |          |         |              |         |         |         |      |        |         |       |       |
| Reset Dr | tabaaa     | leve       | art Data | hana    | Evenent Dat  | inhan a |         | OK      |      | C-     | neel    |       | \.    |
| Reset Da | itabáse    | Imp        | ort Data | Dase    | Export Da    | tabase  |         | UK      |      | Ca     | incel   |       | чрріу |

Applies settings specific to the Ganymede amplifier protection unit.

| Amplifier Status | Displays the amplifier status: either normal operation or a "tripped" condition    |
|------------------|--|
| RESET            | If tripped, this button sends a message to try to reset the trip. Please note that |
|                  | trip conditions will only be reset after the fault condition has been removed      |
|                  | AND PTT has been cancelled.  |
| Port             | Selects the COM port for connection to Ganymede                                    |
| Enable CAT       | When clicked, a connection is established  |
| Firmware Version | Displays the hardware and software version of the Arduino controlling the          |
|                  | Ganymede protection unit.  |

#### 6.1.9 Filters Tab

| 🛄 Setup   |                          |                    | - 🗆           | ×          |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------|------------|
| General Audio Display DSP Trans   | mit PA Settings Appearar | nce Keyboard CAT   | Control Tests |            |
| H/W Select F/W Set ADC Options  | Calibration OC Control   | Ant/Filters Apollo | Filters RX2   | Navigation |
| RX1 Filter Controls<br>Max Filter Width (Hz): 9999 +<br>Width Slider Mode: Linear ~ | RX2 Filter Contro        | bls                |               |            |
| Max Filter Shift (Hz): 9999 🖨   | Default Low C            | ut (Hz): 100 🛓     |               |            |
|   |                          |                    |               |            |
|   |                          |                    |               |            |
|   |                          |                    |               |            |
| Reset Database Import Database  | Export Database          | ОК                 | Cancel        | Apply      |

Controls the min and max frequencies for the variable filter passband controls on the console.

| Max Filter Width (Hz) | Sets the maximum width available through the variable filter controls     |
|-----------------------|---|
| Width Slider Mode     | Sets the slider to have linear, Log or Log10 modes. The log modes will    |
|                       | have better resolution for narrow (e.g. SW) filters.                      |
| Max Filter Shift (Hz) | Sets the maximum shift from centre available through the variable filter  |
|                       | controls  |
| Save Slider / Display | If Checked, the settings for VAR1 and VAR2 filters will be updated by the |
| Changes               | changes made to the shift and width sliders. If not, the changes will be  |
|                       | lost after a new filter setting is selected.                              |
| Default Low Cut (Hz)  | Sets the default low frequency cut-off of USB or LSB filters.             |

#### 6.1.10 RX2 Tab



Provides controls for a second receiver, where fitted.

#### 6.1.11 Navigation Tab

| General Au | dio Displa                    | y DSP                  | Transn      | nit PA Setti  | ings Appe    | arance          | Keybo   | oard C  | AT Contr | rol Tests | 5    |  |
|------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------|---------|---------|----------|-----------|------|--|
| H/W Select | F/W Set                       | ADC                    | Options     | Calibration   | OC Contro    | Ant/            | Filters | Filters | RX2      | Naviga    | tion |  |
| Space Nav  | vigator                       |                        |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| VFO C      | ontrol                        |                        |             |               | Γ            | Will tu         | rn gree | n on m  | ouse wh  | neel      |      |  |
| Panada     | pter Flight                   |                        |             |               |              |                 | -       |         |          | _         |      |  |
|            |                               |                        |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Pauloout   |                               | MID                    |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| nawinput   | HID CONUOI -                  | WIF                    |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| NOTE: Th   | is is work in                 | progres                | s and may   | / have unde   | sirable side | effects         |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| _          |                               |                        |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Also us    |                               |                        |             |               |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
|            | e specific fr                 | iouse wi               | heel for VF | O adjust      |              |                 |         |         |          |           |      |  |
|            | e specific fr                 | iouse wł               | heel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | iest            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
|            | e specific fr                 | nouse wł               | heel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | iest            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
|            | e specific ir                 | nouse wi               | heel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | iesi            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | iouse wi               | neel for VF | O adjust<br>~ | wheel        | iest            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | el when r              | heel for VF | O adjust<br>∽ | wheel        | iesi            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | el when r              | neel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | iest            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | el when r              | neel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | <del>lest</del> |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | el when r              | no app foc  | O adjust      | wheel        | iest            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis        | ten for whee                  | el when r              | neel for VF | O adjust      | wheel        | test            |         |         |          |           |      |  |
| Lis<br>Wr  | ten for whee<br>reel only adj | el when r<br>justs VF( | neel for VF | Evrort Dia    | wheel        | test            | OK      |         | Carc     | al        | And  |  |

This form provides settings for alternative forms of user input and tuning.

| Space Navigator      | Controls what a 3DConnexion SpaceMouse <sup>®</sup> interface device can adjust. |
|----------------------|--|
| RawInput HID control | This section is under development  |

### 6.2 Audio Settings Tabs

| General Audio Display DSP Transmit PA Se<br>VAC 1 VAC 2<br>Enable VAC 1<br>Virtual Audio Cable Setup<br>Driver: MME<br>Input: Microsoft Sound Mapper - Ing V   | attings     Appearance     Keyboard     CAT Control     Tests       affer Size     Gain (dB)     Combine VAC       2048     Imput Channels       TX:     0 Imput Channels       Direct I/Q  |
|--|---|
| Enable VAC 1  Virtual Audio Cable Setup  Driver: MME  Input: Microsoft Sound Mapper - Int   S  | dfer Size<br>2048 ✓ Gain (dB)<br>RX: 0 ♀ Combine VAC<br>Input Channels<br>TX: 0 ♀ Direct I/Q  |
| Output:       Microsoft Sound Mapper - OL ∨         Auto Enable       ✓         Enable for Digital modes, Disable       □         for all others       □         VAC1 Monitor       □         TO VAC:       □         Overflows       486         Underflows       74         Var Ratio       0.999240 | Mono/Stereo       Output to VAC         48000 ✓       Stereo         Allow PTT to override/bypass       Use RX2         Allow SPACE to override/bypass VAC for Phone       Use RX2         Allow MOX to override/bypass VAC for Phone       Buffer Latency (ms) RingBuffer         Bypass VAC for recording playback       PortAudio         DM VAC:       Force erflows         88       1.000000 ♀         Ratio       0.999513 |

Controls for Virtual Audio Connection 1 (VAC1). This is used for PC audio (microphone, speaker) connections, and to connect to Virtual Audio Cable channels to connect audio to other programs within the same PC. See section 7.4 for more details of Virtual Audio Cable drivers.

| Enable VAC1       | Enables this channel. This has the same effect as clicking <b>VAC1</b> on the console. |
|-------------------|--|
| Driver section    | This section will be operating system and PC specific. The MME drivers seems           |
|                   | to work well.  |
| Auto enable       | If ticked, DIG L and DIG U modes will activate VAC1                                    |
| VAC1 Monitor      | Monitors buffer under/overflows as a result of difference between the radio            |
|                   | and PC clocks. The effect of this is removed by resampling filters in the DSP          |
|                   | processing chain.  |
| Buffer size       | Leave alone unless you know why you are changing it!                                   |
| Sample Rate       | Leave at 48000 Hz unless you know why you are changing it!                             |
| Mono/Stereo       | Tick for stereo audio. In general leave this on: THETIS uses stereo audio on RX        |
|                   | and the <b>pan</b> sliders allow audio to be directed to left or right.                |
| RX Gain           | Sets the outgoing audio gain from the RX to other programs                             |
| TX Gain           | Sets the incoming (e.g. microphone) audio gain to the TX                               |
| Combine VAC       | If ticked, stereo in (e.g. microphone) will be combined to one mono channel.           |
| input channels    |  |
| Direct I/Q output | When ticked sends pre-processed rather than post processed I/Q data to the             |
| to VAC            | VAC connection.  |
| Allow PTT to      | When ticked, if the Mic PTT is pressed the microphone input will be selected           |
| override VAC for  | instead of VAX   |
| phone             |  |
| Allow space to    | When ticked, if the space bar is pressed the microphone input will be selected         |
| override VAC for  | instead of VAX   |
| phone             |  |

| Allow MOX to       | When ticked, if the <b>MOX</b> button is pressed the microphone input will be selected instead of VAX |
|--------------------|---|
| phone              |   |
| Bypass VAC for     | When ticked, Vac is not used is a recorded audio file is played back.                                 |
| recording playback |   |
| Buffer Latency     | Controls for the latency of the audio buffer. Leave alone if you don't know why                       |
|                    | you are changing this!  |

#### 6.2.2 VAC2 🛄 Setup \_ Х General Audio Display DSP Transmit PA Settings Appearance Keyboard CAT Control Tests VAC 1 VAC 2 Enable VAC 2 🔽 Use VAC2 on Split Buffer Size Gain (dB) Combine VAC Virtual Audio Cable Setup RX: 0 ᆃ 2048 ~ Driver: MME $\sim$ TX: 0 🜩 Direct I/Q Sample Rate Input: Microsoft Sound Mapper - In; $\, \smallsetminus \,$ Output to VAC Output: Microsoft Sound Mapper - Ou $\, \lor \,$ 48000 ~ Auto Enable Mono/Stereo Enable for Digital modes, Disable for all others Stereo Buffer Latency (ms) RingBuffer 120 🌲 Manual VAC2 Monitor TO VAC: FROM VAC: Force Force PortAudio Overflows 0 Overflows 1.000000 🖨 1.000000 🖨 120 🜲 Underflows 0 Underflows 0 Manual Var Ratio 1.000000 Var Ratio 1.000000 Reset Database Import Database... Export Database... OK Cancel Apply

Similar controls for the VAC2 channel.

Use VAC2 on split Selects use of VAC2 when band **Split** is active.

# 6.3 Display Settings Tabs

| g Setup                                   |  |  |  |                      |  |                            |            | -  |           |
|---|--|--|--|----------------------|--|----------------------------|------------|--|-----------|
| ieneral                                   | Audio  | Display  | DSP                                      | Transmit             | PA Settings  | Appearance                 | Keyboard   | CAT Control  | Tests     |
| Genera                                    | RX 1   | RX 2   | TX                                       |                      |  |                            |            |  |           |
| Refre<br>Ma                               | sh Rates<br>in Displa<br>Fill Pana                                     | ay FPS:<br>adapter   | 60 💠                                     | Phas<br>Num<br>Pt Si | e Mode<br>Pts: 100<br>ize: 1                                 | •                          | 7000DLE/80 | 000DLE<br>olts/Amps  |           |
| Pea<br>CP                                 | ak Text (<br>U Meter   | ms)<br>(ms)  | 500 ¢<br>1000 ¢                          | Scop                 | e Mode<br>e (us): 10000                                      | ÷                          | Other      | ode/filter on VF   | Os        |
| Multir<br>Ana<br>Dig<br>Ave<br>Ana<br>Dig | neter<br>alog Peal<br>ital Peal<br>erage Tir<br>alog Refr<br>ital Refr | k Hold (m<br>k Hold (m<br>me (ms):<br>resh (ms)<br>esh (ms): | s): 500<br>s): 500<br>400<br>: 50<br>200 |                      | Show Decima<br>Signal Histor<br>S Reading<br>dBm<br>uV (rms) | al<br>y 2000 <del>\$</del> | (ms)       | hiver Engine<br>DirectX<br>Normal<br>Show FPS<br>Anti-aliased<br>VSync | ~         |
| Pana                                      | dapter Po<br>Enabled<br>Peak Hol                                       | eak Blobs<br>3<br>d 200                                      | ►<br>0 ÷                                 | (ms)                 | <b>Only Inside</b><br>Fade                                   | Filter                     |            | Accurate fra   | me timing |

| Refresh Rates | Main display FPS                                   | Sets no. updates per second for the main display              |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
|               | Fill Panadapter                                    | When ticked, the panadapter area is filled below the trace    |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Peak Text (ms)                                     | Sets the rate at which the peak signal text is updated below  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | the main display  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | CPU meter (ms)                                     | sets the rate at which CPU utilisation is updated             |  |  |  |  |  |
| Multimeter    | Analog Peak Hold                                   | Time period for which peaks are held on the analogue          |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | multimeter  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Digital Peak Hold                                  | Time period for which peaks are held on the meter text        |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | display for <u>Fwd Pwr</u>                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Average Time                                       | Time period over which <u>Sig Avg</u> is averaged             |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Analog Refresh                                     | Update period for the analogue multimeter                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Digital Refresh                                    | Update period for the multimeter text display                 |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Show Decimal                                       | If ticked, shows values with a single fractional digit        |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Signal History                                     | If ticked, shows the meter history as a coloured bar. The     |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | period that is displayed is shown. The colour can be          |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | changed – see section 6.7.3.                                  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | S Reading  | If selected, shows signal level as S meter readings e.g. "S7" |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | dBm  | If selected, shows the absolute RX input level in dBm (log    |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | scale; 0dBm = 1 milliwatt)                                    |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | uV   | If selected, shows the absolute RX input level in microvolts  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Phase Mode    | Sets the number of points displayed per 360° cycle |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Scope Mode    | Sets the horizonta                                 | l timebase for Scope mode displays                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7000/8000DLE  | Enables additional                                 | displays for specific radio models showing PA voltage and     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Show          | PA current. Display                                | yed in place of CPU utilisation to the bottom left.           |  |  |  |  |  |
| Volts/Amps    |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Other         | Small mode/filter                                  | on VFOs When ticked, small indicators are shown on the        |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | VFO frequency boxes for the current mode and                  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |  | filter  |  |  |  |  |  |

| Panadapter<br>peak blobs | When enabled, markers in the panadapter display the signal level of each peak.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Driver engine            | Selects the graphics language used to draw the panadapter type displays.<br>DirectX is more processor efficient and should be selected by default |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          |   | ,   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | The windows process pric  | ority can be changed. Only change this if you know the  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | likely effects!   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | Show FPS  | If ticked, displays the achieved frames per second at top left of the spectrum display area. For debugging. |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | Anti Aliased If ticked, the drawn display is anti-aliased to the drawn edges less harsh.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | VSync If ticked, the display area redraw rate is  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          |   | synchronised with the windows frame rate for the monitor in use   |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          | Accurate Frame Timing   | If ticked, uses accurate measurements for the display update rate.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                          |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |

Be aware that setting faster updates will increase processor loading.

#### 6.3.2 RX1

| 🛄 Setup                                    |                     | - 🗆 X  |
|--|---------------------|--|
| General Audio Display DSP Tran             | smit PA Settings    | Appearance Keyboard CAT Control Tests        |
| General RX 1 RX 2 TX                       |                     |  |
| Fast Fourier Transform<br>Size             |                     | Waterfall<br>Low Level -130 ♀ Low Color: ■ - |
| Min  | Max                 | High Level -80 🖨 🗸 Waterfall AGC             |
| Bin Width (Hz) 2.930<br>Window Hann        | ~                   | Palette enhanced ∨<br>Update 16 ≑            |
| Panadapter Waterfall<br>Detector: Detector | :                   | Band for Low/High Levels: 40 meters          |
| Peak ~                                     | $\sim$              |  |
| Averaging: Averaging                       | ıg:                 | Searts in Crid                               |
| Log Recursive V<br>Time (ms): 30 Time (ms  | ursive ~<br>):120 - | Max: 40 1 Min: -140 1                        |
| 1 Hz BW: Av / Sa                           |                     | Band for Max/Min Levels: 40 meters           |
| Reset Database Import Database             | Export Databas      | ise OK Cancel Apply                          |

| Fast Fourier  | Sets the FFT size and window function for spectrum based displays. The     |
|---------------|--|
| Transform     | achieved resolution (Hz) is calculated and shown.                          |
| Panadapter    | Sets the detector mode and averaging used for the panadapter display       |
| Waterfall     | Sets the detector mode and averaging used for the waterfall display        |
| Waterfall     | Sets parameters for how spectrum amplitude is converted to coloured pixels |
|               | for the waterfall display  |
| Spectrum Grid | Max Level of top of display (dBm)  |

|  | Min   | Level of bottom of display (dBm)                     |
|--|-------|--|
|  | Step  | Vertical step size (dBm)                             |
|  | Align | Sets where the vertical axis and legend is displayed |

| Disalar                |               |             |                      |              |              | -        |   |
|------------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------|--------------|----------|---|
| ieneral Audio Display  | DSP Transmit  | PA Settings | Appearance           | Keyboard     | CAT Control  | Tests    |   |
| General RX 1 RX 2      | TX            |             |                      |              |              |          |   |
| Fast Fourier Transform | Size          |             | Waterfall            |              |              |          |   |
|                        | Size          |             | Low Level            | -120 🌲       | Low Color    | r 🔳 🖛    |   |
| Min                    |               | Max         | High Level           | -80 🜲        | ✓ Water      | fall AGC |   |
| Bin Width (Hz) 2.930   |               |             | Palette e            | nhanced v    |              |          |   |
| Window Hann            | ~             |             | Update<br>Period (ms | a): 16 🜲     |              |          |   |
| Panadapter             | Waterfall     |             | Band for Lo          | ow/Hiah Lev  | els: 40 mete | ers      | 1 |
| Detector:              | Detector:     |             |                      |              |              |          | 1 |
| Peak $\checkmark$      | Peak          | $\sim$      |                      |              |              |          |   |
| Averaging:             | Averaging:    |             |                      |              |              |          |   |
| Log Recursive $~~$     | Log Recursiv  | e v         | Spectru              | um Grid      |              |          |   |
| Time (ms): 30          | Time (ms): 12 | 0 单         | Max:                 | -40 🌻        | Min: -14(    | ) ≑      |   |
|                        |               |             | Step:                | 5 🌲          |              |          |   |
| 1 Hz BW: Av / Sa       |               |             |                      |              | 40 -         |          |   |
|                        |               |             | Band to              | or Max/Min L | evels: 40 n  | neters   | _ |

The same form, but for RX2 display

| eneral Audio D     | isplay D | SP Transmit    | PA Settings | Appearance | Keyboard | CAT Co | ntrol Te | ests     |      |
|--------------------|----------|----------------|-------------|------------|----------|--------|----------|----------|------|
| General RX 1       | RX 2     | TX             | -           |            |          |        |          |          |      |
| Fast Fourier Trans | sform    |                |             |            |          |        | TYG      | id Cosla |      |
|                    | Size     | 9              |             |            |          |        | TX Gn    | lu Scale |      |
| Min                |          |                | Max         |            |          |        | Max:     | 20       | -    |
|                    |          |                | •           |            |          |        | Min:     | -80      | ÷    |
| Bin Width (Hz)     | 2.930    |                |             |            |          |        | Step:    | 5        | ÷    |
| Window             | Hann     | ~              |             |            |          |        | Align:   | Cntr     | ~    |
| Panadapter         |          | Waterfall      |             |            |          |        |          |          |      |
| Detector:          |          | Detector:      |             |            |          |        | M Fil    | I Panada | apte |
| Peak               | $\sim$   | Peak           | $\sim$      |            |          |        | ⊡ Di     | splay Gr | Id   |
| Averaging:         |          | Averaging:     |             |            |          |        |          |          |      |
| Log Recursive      | $\sim$   | Log Recursive  | $\sim$      |            |          |        | Water    | fall     |      |
| Time (ms): 30      | <b>÷</b> | Time (ms): 120 | ÷           |            |          |        | lowle    | vel: .70 |      |
|                    |          |                |             |            |          |        |          |          |      |
| 1 Hz BW: Av /      | Sa       |                |             |            |          |        | High Le  | evel: 30 | E    |
| 1 Hz BW: Av /      | Sa       |                |             |            |          |        | High Le  | evel: 30 | ł    |

| Fast Fourier  | Sets the FFT size and window function for spectrum based displays. The |
|---------------|--|
| Transform     | achieved resolution (Hz) is calculated and shown.                      |
| Panadapter    | Sets the detector mode and averaging used for the panadapter display   |
| Waterfall     | Sets the detector mode and averaging used for the waterfall display    |
| TX Grid Scale | Max Level of top of display (dBm)                                      |

|           | Min                           | Level of bottom of display (dBm)                     |  |  |  |
|-----------|-------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
|           | Step Vertical step size (dBm) |  |  |  |  |
|           | Align                         | Sets where the vertical axis and legend is displayed |  |  |  |
|           | Display Grid                  | When ticked, the grid is drawn.                      |  |  |  |
| Waterfall | Sets the low and h            | igh levels for conversion to coloured pixels         |  |  |  |

### 6.4 DSP Settings Tabs

There are many tabs under this section. They provide in-depth settings for the underlying DSP operation within THETIS and are not intended for most users to adjust: if you know what to change you will know the meaning!

#### 6.4.1 Options

| 🛄 Setup   |  |  |   |  |  |   | -                                  |            | ×     |
|---|--|--|---|--|--|---|------------------------------------|------------|-------|
| General Audio   | Display DSP  | Transmit   | PA Settings   | Арреа  | rance Ke                                 | yboard                                  | CAT Control                        | Tests      |       |
| Options CW  | AGC/ALC AM   | M/SAM FM   | Audio N   | EER  | NR/ANF                                   | MNF                                     | NB/SNB                             | VOX/DE     | CFC   |
| Buffer Size<br>SSB/AM<br>RX: 64<br>TX: 64<br>FM<br>RX: 256<br>TX: 128<br>CW<br>RX: 64 | Filter<br>SS<br>V<br>V<br>T<br>V<br>R<br>V<br>CV<br>V<br>R | Size<br>B/AM<br>C 4096<br>4096<br>C 4096<br>C 4096<br>V<br>C 4096<br>V<br>C 4096 | Filte<br>St<br>R<br>T<br>FI<br>R<br>V<br>R<br>C<br>V<br>R | r Type<br>58/AM<br>X: Low I<br>A<br>X: Low I<br>X: Low I<br>N<br>X: Low I<br>N | Latency<br>Latency<br>Latency<br>Latency | >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>> | Filter Windo<br>RX BH -<br>TX BH - | 7 ×<br>7 × |       |
| Digital<br>RX: 64<br>TX: 64<br>Reset Database   | Pig     R     T     T     Import Datab                     | pital<br>(: 4096<br>(: 4096<br>(: 4096<br>(: 4096<br>(: 4096                     | V R<br>V T  | gital<br>X: Low I<br>X: Low I<br>Low I   | Latency<br>Latency                       | ~<br>~                                  | Cancel                             |            | Аррју |

This form selects buffer sizes for processing, filter lengths and types for different modes, and selects the window functions used for filtering.

6.4.2 CW

| Setup   |  |                           |                    |  | _                     |                 | ×     |
|---|--|---------------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------------|-----------------|-------|
| General Audio Display<br>Options CW AGC/ALC                                   | OSP Transmit PA<br>AM/SAM FM   | A Settings Ap<br>Audio EE | pearance<br>R NR/A | Keyboard<br>NF MNF                             | CAT Control<br>NB/SNB | Tests<br>VOX/DE | CFC   |
| CW Pitch (Hz)<br>Freq: 600 +<br>Se<br>CW Break-In<br>OFF<br>Delay (ms): 300 + | nections<br>imary: Radi<br>econdary: None<br>Disable UI M<br>Changes | o v<br>e v<br>OX          | Dptions            | ne<br>e Paddles<br>3<br>ode Swch<br>Char Space |                       |                 |       |
| Reset Database Import [   | Database Expo  | ort Database              |                    | ОК   | Cancel                |                 | Apply |

These controls affect CW operation and key type. Some of these settings are also available on the CW "mode specific" section of the console – see section 4.1.10.2.

| CW Pitch freq             | Sets the frequency expected for CW audio. This sets the offset from carrier for TX operation.  |
|---------------------------|--|
| CW break-in               | This control alternates between Off, Semi, and QSK. The semi break-in delay time (ms) is adjustable. The same controls are available on the console (section 4.1.10.2) |
| Connections               | Sets whether the key is connected to the radio, or to the PC via a COM port. See section 7.7.1.2 for details on connecting a CW key to your PC                         |
| Disable UI MOX<br>Changes | If ticked, changes to some console controls are disabled while in TX.  |
| lambic                    | When ticked, the keyer generates timed dots and dashes triggered by an lambic keyer. When unticked a "straight" key is assumed.  |
| Sidetone                  | Turns on/off audio sidetone for CW (either normal key or iambic keyer)   |
| Reverse<br>Paddles        | Swaps the "dot" and "dash" paddle actions. Allows these to be changed without affecting wiring.  |
| Mode B                    | When ticked, emulates iambic mode B; otherwise emulates mode A   |

| Auto mode<br>switch  | If ticked, a CW mode will be automatically set when the key or paddles are activated. |
|----------------------|---|
| Strict char<br>space |   |
| Weight               | Sets the width ratio between dot and dash.  |

#### 6.4.3 AGC/ALC

| 🛄 Setup  | - 🗆 ×             |
|--|-------------------|
| General Audio Display DSP Transmit PA Settings Appearance Keyboard   | CAT Control Tests |
| AGC RX1 RX2<br>Slope (dB): 0 ÷ 0 ÷ Enabled   | ALC               |
| Max.Gain (dB): 15  | Max Gain (dB): 3  |
| Decay (ns):         250 ♀         250 ♀         Decay (ms):         100 ♀           Hang (ms):         250 ♀         250 ♀         Decay (ms):         100 ♀           Fixed Gain (dB):         20 ♀         20 ♀             Hang Threshold:         20 ♀ | Decay (ms): 10 🜩  |
| RX1<br>RX2   |                   |
| ☑ Display RX1 Gain Line       ☑ Spectrum       ☑ Display RX2 Gain Line         ☑ Display RX1 Hang Line       ☑ Spectrum       ☑ Display RX2 Hang Line  | Spectrum Spectrum |
|  |                   |
| Reset Database Import Database Export Database OK  | Cancel Apply      |

AGC operation is explained in the WDSP guide [6] pages 40-46.

| AGC     | Controls the RX AGC operation. This is critical to HF reception. This sets parameters for the AGC; there are also console controls for AGC (see section 4.1.6).                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|         | Slope (dB)  | Sets a gain slope after the AGC has started to take effect.<br>When 0dB, there is no further amplitude variation above the<br>AGC threshold; with say 10dB there is a softer effect.                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Max Gain (dB)   | The max AGC gain, set by the console AGC gain control (section 4.1.6). Should be set to just above the noise floor.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Decay (ms)  | sets a decay time if the console has selected custom AGC   |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Hang (ms)   | sets a hang time if the console has selected custom AGC  |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Fixed Gain (dB)   | sets the gain used if the console has selected Fixed AGC.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Display gain line<br>Display hang line<br>Spectrum  | If ticked shows the AGC gain on the panadapter<br>If ticked shows the AGC hang level on the panadapter<br>If ticked, shows a dotted line across the panadapter display.<br>If not ticked shows the green or yellow square. |  |  |  |  |  |
|         | Hang Threshold  | Sets a threshold for AGC "hang". Available in <u>Long</u> , <u>Slow</u> and <u>Custom</u> AGC  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Leveler | Controls the TX Leveler operation. The TX leveler provides a "slow time"<br>amplitude adjustment intended to increase gain if you have momentarily moved<br>away from the microphone for example. |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|     | Enabled   | If ticked, the leveller is enabled.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|     | Max Gain  | Sets the max gain the leveller can apply to "quiet" audio.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | Decay   | sets a decay time constant: controls how quickly gain ramps back<br>to the default 0dB value after a change.                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ALC | Controls the TX Automatic Level Control operation. This operates much more quickly that the leveller and is responsible for making sure that the digital-to-analogue converter in the TX is never overdriven. |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | Max Gain  | sets the max gain the ALC can apply (default = 0dB). The ALC will set gains below this value to attenuate larger audio signals. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|     | Decay   | sets the time constant to ramp back after an over-range signal.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 6.4.4 AM/SAM

| Options  | CW       | AGC/AL   | LC AM/  | SAM FM   | Audio | EER | NR/A       | NF   | MNF      | NB/SNB        | VOX/DE | CFC |
|----------|----------|----------|---------|----------|-------|-----|------------|------|----------|---------------|--------|-----|
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
| -RX1 -   | AM / SA  | M Demod  | ulation |          |       |     | RXA        | M/S  | SB Max   | x Squelch Tai | 1      |     |
| <b>F</b> | ade Lev  | eler     | 6       | DC Block |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
| Side     | band Sel | ect (SAM | ONLY)   |          |       |     | Len        | gth: | 0.1      | ÷             |        |     |
| ٥        | SB+USE   |          | SB      | ⊖ USB    |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
| -RX2 -   | AM / SA  | M Demod  | ulation |          |       |     | AM T       | rans | mit Side | eband Select  |        |     |
| ✓ F      | ade Lev  | eler     | E       | DC Block |       |     | <u>ا (</u> | SB+L | JSB      |               |        |     |
| Side     | and Sel  | ect (SAM | ONLY)-  |          |       |     | OLS        | SB   |          |               |        |     |
| ٥        | SB+USE   |          | SB      | ○ USB    |       |     | O U        | SB   |          |               |        |     |
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |
|          |          |          |         |          |       |     |            |      |          |               |        |     |

| AM/SAM<br>demodulation | Sideband select     | for SAM, selects which sideband is used for demodulation.<br>Useful if there is QRM one side but not the other.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------------|---------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|                        | Fade leveller       | This option has the effect of setting a constant level carrier.<br>The original carrier is replaced with a locally generated<br>constant amplitude one.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                        | DC Block            | Selects the AM carrier block, to remove carrier (zero<br>frequency) audio. If ticked, the carrier is removed post<br>detection. This is useful for example of the signal is being<br>recorded prior to retransmission. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RX AM/SSB max          | Sets the "tail" tir | ne i.e. how long squelch waits before gating off the audio.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| squelch tail           |                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AM TX sideband         | Selects whether     | both sidebands, or just one sideband, are generated for AM   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| select                 |                     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| 6.4.5                               | FM        |         |                |          |       |          |        |       |      |      |         | _    |        | ~     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------|---------|----------------|----------|-------|----------|--------|-------|------|------|---------|------|--------|-------|
| General                             | Audio     | Display | DSP            | Transmit | PAS   | Settinas | Appear | rance | Kevh | oard | CAT Con | trol | Tests  | ~     |
| Options                             | CW        | AGC/AL  | C AM/          | SAM FM   |       | Audio    | EER    | NR/A  | NF   | MNF  | NB/SN   | B \  | /OX/DE | CFC   |
| -FM Re<br>☑ Rei<br>-FM Tra<br>□ Pre | ansmitter | CSS Ton | e<br>e Limitin | g        |       |          |        |       |      |      |         |      |        |       |
| Reset Da                            | tabase    | Impor   | t Databas      | se E     | xport | Databa   | se     |       | OK   | (    | Can     | cel  |        | Apply |

| RX Remove        | Enables a filter to remove CTCSS tones from the RX audio                           |
|------------------|--|
| CTCSS tone       |  |
| TX Pre-emphasise | Selects whether the audio pre-emphasis filter is before or after the limiter.      |
| before limiting  | Default: after the limiter. Putting this before the limiter may make the FM signal |
|                  | sound louder at the RX end.  |

### 6.4.6 Audio

| acticiat     | Audio | Display        | DSP        | Transr | nit P | A Settings | Appeara             | ance Ke             | yboard | CAT Cont | rol Tes | ts   |     |
|--------------|-------|----------------|------------|--------|-------|------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------|----------|---------|------|-----|
| Options      | CW    | AGC/AL         | .C AM/     | SAM    | FM    | Audio      | EER                 | NR/ANF              | MNF    | NB/SNE   | VOX/    | DE   | CFC |
| RX1 -        | APF   | Gain (dB)      | CW Pite    |        | +250  | Cons<br>R  | ole APF C<br>X1 ◯ F | Controls<br>RX1 Sub |        | 2        |         |      |     |
| Tune         | 10    | I I I I        |            |        | 150   |            |                     |                     |        |          |         |      |     |
| DV1          |       | -              |            | 1      |       |            |                     |                     |        |          |         |      |     |
|              | able  | ⊦<br>Gain (dB) |            | •      |       |            |                     |                     |        |          |         |      |     |
| Tune         | -250  | Relative       | to CW Pito | h      | +250  |            |                     |                     |        |          |         |      |     |
| <b>D</b> 1.1 | 10    |                | · ·        |        | 150   | -RX1       | - Dolly Filt        | er<br>+0 (니~)       | 2125   | •        | 1 (11-) | 2205 |     |
| BW           |       |                |            |        |       |            | liable              | 10 (H2)             | 2125   | •        | (nz)    | 2233 | •   |
| RX2 -        | APF   | Gain (dB)      |            |        |       | RX1        | Sub - Dol           | ly Filter           | -      |          |         |      |     |
| -            | -250  | Relative       | to CW Pito | h      | +250  |            | nable               | f0 (Hz)             | 2125   | ÷ f      | 1 (Hz)  | 2295 | ŧ   |
| lune         | 10    |                | •          |        | 150   | RX2        | - Dolly Filt        | er                  |        |          |         |      |     |
| BW           | -     |                |            |        |       |            | nable               | f0 (Hz)             | 2125   | ≑ f      | 1 (Hz)  | 2295 | -   |
|              |       |                |            |        |       |            |                     |                     |        |          |         |      |     |

| APF                  | These settings are for three Audio Peaking Filters: one for each of RX1,    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|                      | RX2 and RX1 Sub-receiver. The controls are as described in section          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                      | 4.1.10.2.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Console APF controls | Selects which APF is controlled by the console (see section 4.1.10.2)       |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RX1 Dolly filter     | Twin bandpass filters for RTTY type modes. One filter is available for each |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RX1 Sub Dolly Filter | of RX1, RX2 and RX1 sub-receiver.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| RX2 Dolly filter     | Enable Turns the filter on or off   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| Fo    | Selects the lower audio centre frequency |
|-------|--|
| $F_1$ | Selects the upper audio centre frequency |

#### 6.4.7 EER

| aeneral Audio      | Display   | DSP    | Transmit | PA Setting | s Appear | ance | Keyboard   | CAT Control | Tests  |          |
|--------------------|-----------|--------|----------|------------|----------|------|------------|-------------|--------|----------|
| Options CW         | AGC/A     | ALC AM | /SAM FM  | Audio      | EER      | NR/A | NF MNF     | NB/SNB      | VOX/DE | CFC      |
| Transmit           | in EER M  | lode   |          |            |          | P    | WM Control |             |        |          |
|                    |           |        |          |            |          | 1    | Maximum (( | 0 - 1023)   | 800    | <b>•</b> |
| Amplitud           | e Modulat | e IQ   |          |            |          |      | Minimum (O | - 1023)     | 100    | -        |
| 🔽 Use Dela         | iys       |        |          |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |
| Env Gain           | 0.        | 500 🜲  | ]        |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |
| Env Delay (u       | ıs) 20    | 00.00  | ]        |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |
| Phase Gain 0.500 🜩 |           |        |          |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |
| Phase Delay        | 00.00     |        |          |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |
|                    |           |        |          |            |          |      |            |             |        |          |

This form controls the signals provided for external Envelope Elimination & Restoration (EER) type amplifiers. The settings are explained in the WDSP guide [6] p153-155.

| Transmit in<br>EER Mode | When ticked, the TX generates waveforms suitable for an EER mode amplifier. You should have an appropriate amplifier and understand the settings required for this mode before using it, otherwise things may not go well! |
|-------------------------|--|
| Amplitude               | If unticked, phase information only (with amplitude = 1) is provided to the  |
| Modulate<br>I/Q         | transmitter. If ticked, a normal I/Q carrier is provided to the amplifier.   |
| Use Delays              | If ticked, user adjustable delays for the RF path are implemented  |
| Envelope                | Sets the algorithm envelope (mgain) value.   |
| Gain                    |  |
| Envelope                | Sets the delay to be used for the envelope samples.  |
| Delay                   |  |
| Phase Gain              | Sets the algorithm phase (pgain) value.  |
| Phase Delay             | Sets the delay to be used for the phase (I/Q) samples.   |
| PWM                     | Sets the minimum and maximum values for the Pulse Width Modulated (PWM)  |
| control                 | envelope output (range 0-1023)   |

#### 6.4.8 NR/ANF

| 🛄 Setup  |                                     |                   |  |                                     |                                       |  |      |   | _                   | . 🗆   | ×   |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|------|---|---------------------|---|-----|
| General<br>Options<br>NR<br>Taps:<br>Delay<br>Gain:  | Audio<br>CW<br>64<br>16<br>100      | Display<br>AGC/AL | DSP<br>C AM/<br>ANF<br>Taps:<br>Delay:<br>Gain:      | Transmit<br>SAM FM<br>64            | PA Setting<br>Audio<br>NR/1<br>Positi | EER<br>EER<br>IR2/ANF<br>on<br>e-AGC<br>st-AGC | NR// | Keyboard<br>ANF MNF<br>NR2<br>Gain Metho<br>O Linear<br>O Log | CAT Contr<br>NB/SNB | VOX/DE<br>VOX/DE<br>VR2 RX2<br>Gain Metho<br>Linear<br>Log                                  | CFC |
| Leak:<br>- NR R)<br>Taps:<br>Delay<br>Gain:<br>Leak:   | 100<br><2<br>64<br>16<br>100<br>100 |                   | Leak:<br>ANF RX<br>Taps:<br>Delay:<br>Gain:<br>Leak: | 100 ¢<br>2<br>64 ¢<br>16 ¢<br>100 ¢ | NR/<br>Positi                         | NR2/ANF<br>onRX2<br>e-AGC<br>ist-AGC           | :    | Gamma     NPE Metho     OSMS     MMSE     AE Filte            | id r                | <ul> <li>Gamma</li> <li>NPE Metho</li> <li>OSMS</li> <li>MMSE</li> <li>AE Filter</li> </ul> | d   |
| Leak:       100 +         Leak:       100 +         Mathematical Control |                                     |                   |  |                                     |                                       |  |      |   |                     |   |     |

The relevant algorithms are described in the WDSP guide [4] pages 47-57.

| NR         | Control the the signal c   | LMS Noise Reduction algorithm. This uses an adaptive filter to estimate ontent, removing noise content.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|            | Taps   | Sets the number of taps in the LMS filter  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Delay  | sets the signal delay, measured in samples   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Gain   | sets the algorithm gain, in millionths of a unit: higher gain may more effective latch onto carriers, but may also distort speech. Typically 100   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Leak   | sets the algorithm "leak" value, in thousandths of a unit. Typically 100   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ANF        | Controls the Automatic Notch Filter. ANF uses an adaptive filter to select the energy belonging to continuous carriers; these are then subtracted from the input signal. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Taps   | Sets the number of taps in the LMS filter  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Delay  | sets the signal delay, measured in samples   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Gain   | sets the algorithm gain, in millionths of a unit: higher gain may more effective latch onto carriers, but may also distort speech. Typically 100   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | Leak   | sets the algorithm "leak" value in thousandths of a unit. Typically 100  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NR/NR2/ANF | Selects whe  | ere NR, NR2 and ANF are located in the processing chain. They can be   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| position   | applied bef  | ore or after AGC. The default is to have NR, NR2 and ANF <u>pre</u> AGC.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|            | It is though<br>after AGC, s<br>better rece  | It is thought that there could be signal conditions where NR/NR2/ANF should be after AGC, so that the AGC can level out the signal amplitude first. If you find you get better reception by doing it, you can try having NR, NR2 and ANF post AGC. |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| NR2 | Controls the N<br>containing spe | R2 filter. This applies gain to the frequency components of the signal ech and less gain to those containing noise.               |
|-----|----------------------------------|---|
|     | Gain Method                      | Sets the method used to set the gain per frequency bin. All are similar, but <u>Gamma</u> is preferred.                           |
|     | NPE Method                       | Sets the method used to estimate noise power:   |
|     | OSMS                             | Optimum smoothing Minimum Statistics (normal conditions)  |
|     | MMSE                             | Minimum Mean Square Error: this has faster recovery (useful if the channel varies rapidly, eg static crashes caused by lightning) |
|     | AE Filter                        | Selects the Artefact Elimination filter: this should normally be ticked.  |

#### 6.4.9 MNF

|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        | _      |         |       |
|----------|------------|-----------|------------|----------|---------|------------|-----------|--------|-----|--------------|--------|--------|---------|-------|
| ieneral  | Audio      | Display   | DSP        | Transr   | nit P/  | A Settings | Арреа     | rance  | Key | board        | CAT    | Contro | I Tests |       |
| Options  | CW         | AGC/AL    | C AM       | /SAM     | FM      | Audio      | EER       | NR//   | ANF | MNF          | NE     | /SNB   | VOX/DE  | CFC   |
| M. dat 1 | Jatab Dit  |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          | Notch Filt | er        |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
| Notch    | #          | a         | Center     | Freque   | ency (N | (hz)       | Width     | 1 (Hz) |     |              |        |        |         |       |
| 0        | -          |           | 7.2050     | 000      |         | Ŧ          | 200       |        | Ŧ   | $\checkmark$ | Active | 3      |         |       |
|          |            |           | VFC        | AC       |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            | _         |            |          |         |            | _         |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          | Add        |           | Edi        | t        |         | Delete     |           |        |     |              | E      | NTER   | Ca      | ancel |
|          | Auto-Inc   | rease wid | th (if new | eded) to | achie   | /e >100dF  | 3 attenua | ation  |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          | Hato Inc   | rease ma  | an (in nos |          | Genie   |            | o attenue |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |
|          |            |           |            |          |         |            |           |        |     |              |        |        |         |       |

This form allows the notch frequencies for the **MNF** filter (selectable from the console) to be entered. The MNF notches are provided as a "last resort" to remove troublesome interference.

| Notch #             | Selects the notch being edited (1 <sup>st</sup> notch is 0)                  |
|---------------------|--|
| Centre Frequency    | Enters the notch centre frequency  |
| (MHz)               |  |
| Width (Hz)          | Enters notch width in Hz. You will want as small a value as possible eg 100- |
|                     | 200Hz  |
| Active              | Ticked when the notch is programmed and active                               |
| VFO A               | When pressed, copies the current VFO A frequency into the centre frequency   |
|                     | box  |
| Add                 | Adds a new notch to the list   |
| Edit                | Edits the notch entry for the selected notch number                          |
| Delete              | Deletes the currently selected notch entry                                   |
| Auto Increase width | If ticked, the settings will be adjusted to achieve a minimum 100dB          |
|                     | attenuation  |
| Enter               | Enters the notch being edited into the database                              |
| Cancel              | Cancels the current edit   |

#### 6.4.10 NB/SNB

| 🛄 Setup  |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        | _           |        | ×     |
|----------|---------|---------|----------|----------|--------------|---------|---------|--------|-------------|--------|-------|
| General  | Audio   | Display | DSP      | Transmit | PA Settings  | Appeara | ance Ke | yboard | CAT Control | Tests  |       |
| Options  | CW      | AGC/A   | LC AM/   | SAM FM   | Audio        | EER     | NR/ANF  | MNF    | NB/SNB      | VOX/DE | CFC   |
| Noise    | Blanker |         | SNB      |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Thres    | hold 30 | ÷       | Threshol | d 1 8.0  | -            |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| TIMES    | 6 (ms): |         | Threshol | d 2 20.0 | -            |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Slew     | 0.01    | ÷       |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Lead     | 0.01    | <b></b> |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Lag      | 0.01    | -       |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| NB2 M    | IODE    |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Zero     |         | $\sim$  |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |
| Reset Da | tabase  | Impor   | t Databa | se E     | xport Databa | ase     | (       | Ж      | Cancel      |        | Apply |
|          |         |         |          |          |              |         |         |        |             |        |       |

This form controls the operation of algorithms for NB, NB2 & SNB. The algorithms are described in the WDSP guide [4] p121, p128, p35.

| Noise Blanker | The noise blanker detects narrow, high amplitude impulses and removes them before any other processing has been affected. NB ramps the signal to 0 during the impulse; NB2 estimates the original signal. |   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
|               | Threshold   | Sets the<br>This is re                                | threshold level at which a signal is considered an impulse.<br>Plative to mean power in the whole downconverted channel.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Slew  | Ramp "c   | own" or "up" time, in ms.   |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Lead  | The time  | ne before the impulse where gain should reach zero  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Lag The time  |   | e after the impulse before gain should begin to ramp up.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               |   | For each  | or each of the 3 times, suggest 0.01ms starting point.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | NB2 Mode  | Sets the  | ts the estimate used to replace the original signal.  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Zero  |   | Sets signal to 0 (like NB)  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Sample & h  | old   | Holds the value from before the impulse   |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Mean-Hold   |   | averages the signal before & after the impulse  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Hold & Sam  | nple  | Holds the value from after the impulse  |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Linear Inter  | polate  | linearly interpolates across the blanked period   |  |  |  |  |  |
| SNB           | There are two<br>within the SN<br>you leave the<br>better noise l   | o adjustat<br>IB algorith<br>ese on the<br>planking b | ble thresholds for SNB. Their function is deeply embedded<br>im and has no specific description. It is recommended that<br>ir default positions. However if you are able to achieve<br>by adjusting them, then try changes to them. |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Threshold 1   | (defau  | lt 8.0)   |  |  |  |  |  |
|               | Threshold 2   | (defau  | lt 20.0)  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 6.4.11 VOX/DEXP

| I Setup  | - 🗆 ×                |
|--|----------------------|
| General Audio Display DSP Transmit PA Settings Appearance Keyboard | CAT Control Tests    |
| Options CW AGC/ALC AM/SAM FM Audio EER NR/ANF MNF                  | NB/SNB VOX/DE CFC    |
| VOX / DEXP Side-Channe   | el Trigger Filter    |
| Enable VOX Threshold (dBV) -50                                     | Low Cut (Hz) 500     |
|  | High Cut (Hz) 1500 🚖 |
| Attack (ms) 2 + Exp. Ratio (dB) 10.0 + Audio Look A                | head                 |
| Hold (ms) 250 🔶 Hyst.Ratio (dB) 2.0 🜩 🔽 Enable                     |                      |
| Release (ms) 100 🜩 Det Tau (ms) 20 🜩 Look Ahead (                  | (ms) 60 🚖            |
| Anti VOY   |                      |
| Anti-VOX Enable  |                      |
| Use VAC Audio  |                      |
| Gain (dB) 10.0   |                      |
|  |                      |
|  |                      |
|  |                      |
|  | ;                    |
| Reset Database Import Database Export Database OK                  | Cancel Apply         |
|  |                      |

This form provides controls for the VOX and Downward expander algorithms Scott WU2O contributed to the specification of this function. The algorithms are described in the WDSP guide [4] p156.

| VOX/DEXP        | Enable VOX           | If ticked, VOX is enabled. Microphone audio above a             |
|-----------------|----------------------|---|
|                 |                      | threshold will initiate transmit.                               |
|                 | Enable DEXP          | If ticked, enables the downward expander.                       |
|                 | Threshold            | Sets the threshold on the mic input at which VOX is triggered   |
|                 |                      | and the DEXP is triggered.                                      |
|                 | Attack               | The time period over which the DEXP gain is increased after     |
|                 |                      | a threshold level has been reached.                             |
|                 | Hold                 | The time period over which the DEXP gain is held after the      |
|                 |                      | voice level drops below threshold before the gain begins to     |
|                 |                      | ramp down.  |
|                 | Release              | The time period over which DEXP gain ramps down after the       |
|                 |                      | hold time   |
|                 | Exp. Ratio           | The microphone gain is reduced by this amount when below        |
|                 |                      | the threshold level.  |
|                 | Hysteresis           | the ratio between trigger level and the (smaller) level used to |
|                 |                      | count the hold time.  |
|                 | Detector tau         | Sets the time constant used for the VOX trigger detector        |
| Anti-VOX        | Anti-VOX enable      | If ticked, anti-VOX is enabled to attempt to reject RX audio    |
|                 |                      | triggering VOX.   |
|                 | Use VAC Audio        | If ticked, uses VAC audio as the source for anti-VOX; if        |
|                 |                      | unticked, it will use the receiver audio path.                  |
|                 | Gain (dB)            | Sets the gain (dB scale) for anti-VOX                           |
|                 | Tau (ms)             | Sets the time constant used for smoothing anti-VOX data         |
| Side-channel    | If ticked, selects a | n audio filter with user entered min/max frequency. This is     |
| trigger filter  | used to select the   | frequency range used for VOX triggering.                        |
| Auto Look-ahead | If ticked, this sets | a duration in ms during which the algorithm looks ahead at as-  |
|                 | yet un-transmitte    | d audio to detect peaks and initiate TX before they occur. This |
|                 | avoid the first syll | able being cut off, but increases TX latency.                   |

#### 6.4.12 CFC

| 🛄 Setup                                       |                       |                |                        |                     | -                     |                  | ×                                      |
|---|-----------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|------------------|--|
| General Audio Display D<br>Options CW AGC/ALC | SP Transm<br>AM/SAM F | it PA Settings | Appearance<br>EER NR// | Keyboard<br>ANF MNF | CAT Control<br>NB/SNB | Tests<br>VOX/DE  | CFC                                    |
| CFC Enable                                    | PRE-<br>COMP          | 10 dB<br>COMP  |                        |                     |                       |                  |  |
| Phase Rotator<br>Enable<br>338 - FREQ         | 0 dB                  | 0 dB           | 125 🜩 50               | LE LE<br>0          | LE LE<br>00           | 0 🔶 10<br>5000 🗄 | <b>LE</b><br>0000 <del>(</del> -)<br>} |
| 8 🚖 STAGES                                    | +10 dB                | +10 dB         |                        |                     |                       |                  |  |
|   | EQ<br>GAIN<br>-16 dB  | EQ<br>-10 dB   |                        |                     |                       |                  |  |
| Reset Database Import D                       | atabase               | Export Databa  | ise                    | ОК                  | Cancel                |                  | Apply                                  |

This form controls the continuous frequency compressor (CFC). The CFC provides audio compression, but with selectable compression levels for different audio frequencies. These are described in the WDSP guide [4] p86-87.

| CFC Enable         | When clicked the Continuous Frequency Compressor is enabled.         |
|--------------------|--|
| Pre Comp           | Sets an overall compression level applied before CFC                 |
| Comp               | Sliders set the compression level for each audio frequency band      |
| Frequency boxes    | Sets the centre frequency for each audio band                        |
| Post CFC EQ Enable | Enables a post CFC equaliser   |
| Post EQ Gain       | Overall gain setting after the CFC                                   |
| Post EQ Frequency  | Sets frequency dependent gain for each frequency band post CFC       |
| sliders            |  |
| Phase rotator      | Enables the phase rotator. The frequency and number of stages can be |
|                    | entered.   |

## 6.5 Transmit Settings Tab

| 🛄 Setup  |  |   | - 🗆 X   |
|--|--|---|---|
| General Audio Display [  | OSP Transmit PA Settings   | Appearance Keyboard   | CAT Control Tests   |
| Profiles          Default       ✓         Save       Delete         Tune         Power:       10 ♀         TX Meter:       Fwd Pwr ∨         ☑ Use Drive Power | Transmit Filter<br>High: 3020 🗼<br>Low: 120 🌩                                    | Monitor<br>TX AF: 50 🐑<br>AM<br>Carrier Level: 100.0 😫<br>External TX Inhibit<br>Enable TX Inhibit<br>Rev Input Logic | More Profiles Additional TX Profiles Default Default DX Digi 1K@1500 Digi 1K@2210 AM Conventional D-104  Include  Front |
|  | Mic Gain Source<br>Max: 10 🔹 💿 Mic In<br>Min: 40 🔹 🔿 Line In<br>🔽 20dB Mic Boost | Speech Processor<br>☐ CESSB Overshoot 0<br>Use Peak Meter<br>☑ Readings for TX CO<br>and ALC                          | Current<br>Profile  |
| Auto Save  | TX Profile on Thetis close<br>TX Profile on change                               | Limit Drive on Ext. A   | Amp. Overload   |
| Reset Database Import I  | Database Export Database   | se OK   | Cancel Apply  |

| Profile                              | Allows a TX profile to be selected, saved or deleted. TX profiles allow all the TX settings to be stored so that can rapidly be set from the console (section 4.1.10.1). It may be appropriate to have a different profile for each mode, or each microphone. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Auto save profile<br>on THETIS close | When ticked, the current TX profile will be stored when THETIS closes.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Auto save profile<br>on change       | When ticked, the c  | When ticked, the current TX profile will be stored when a change to it is made.            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| More Profiles                        | Allows additional p   | rofiles to be loaded; when ticked, a list appears; The Include                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | button causes the o<br>the top left.  | current item to be copied to the list of available profiles on                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Export Current<br>Profile            | Exports the current   | tly selected profile settings to a file.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Tune                                 | This section contro   | ls the TX behaviour when <b>Tune</b> is selected.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | Power   | Sets a power level for the TX output during Tune.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | TX Meter  | Sets the multimeter mode to be used during Tune.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | Use Drive power   | If ticked, the Drive control is used instead of the user<br>entered Tune power.            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Transmit Filter                      | Sets the low and hi accessible on the co  | gh frequency edges of the TX filter passband. These are also onsole (see section 4.1.10.1) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mic Gain                             | Controls the micro  | phone gain settings.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | Min Gain  | Sets the min gain level for the console mic gain slider                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | Max Gain  | Sets the max gain level for the console mic gain slider                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | Source  | Selects between the radio's front panel Mic connection and                                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      |   | rear Line In signal  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      | 20dB Boost  | When selected an analogue 20dB gain amplifier is used                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                      |   | before any other processing.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Monitor                              | Sets the TX Audio n   | nonitor level (%) routed to the <b>Master AF</b> Control                                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AM Carrier Level                     | Sets the modulatio  | n level for Full carrier AM. 100% is fully modulated.                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| External TX                          | Enable TX Inhibit   | Enables an external hardwired input to inhibit TX operation                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| inhibit            | (see section 7.9.2). When this input is input grounded, TX is inhibited.          |
|--------------------|---|
|                    | Rev. Input Logic Inverts the input bit for TX inhibit                             |
| Speech Processor   | Enables the Controlled Envelope SSB Audio Processing. This reduces the peak       |
| CESSB Overshoot    | SSN=B level with little processing demand. See the WDSP manual [6] for details.   |
| control            |   |
| Use peak           | When ticked, peak readings are used for TX COMP and ALV values on the             |
| readings for TX    | multimeter  |
| COMP and ALC       |   |
| Limit Drive on Ext | Enables an ALC-type input from an external amplifier. An interface board for this |
| Amp Overload       | was developed by K2UE. When enabled, analogue input 4 (if present) reduces        |
|                    | drive as this signal is increased. This is not supported by ANAN7000DLE/800DLE    |
|                    | radios. You will need to calibrate carefully!                                     |

### 6.6 PA Settings Tabs

| General A  | udio   | Display  | DSP      | Tra  | nsmit | PA S     | ettings | Арре  | arance | e Keyb | oard | CAT Cor | ntrol | Tests |      |
|------------|--------|----------|----------|------|-------|----------|---------|-------|--------|--------|------|---------|-------|-------|------|
| PA Gain    | Watt M | eter     |          |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| Gain By    | Band ( | B) ANA   | N 200D   |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| 160m:      | 49.5   | ÷        | VI       | HF0: | 56.2  | -        | VHF     | 7: 56 | 2 🜲    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 80m:       | 50.5   | <b>+</b> | V        | HF1: | 56.2  | -        | VHF     | 8: 56 | 2 🜲    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 60m:       | 50.5   | <b>+</b> | V        | HF2: | 56.2  | <b>+</b> | VHF     | 9: 56 | 2 📫    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 40m:       | 50.0   | <b>+</b> | V        | HF3: | 56.2  | -        | VHF1    | 0: 56 | 2 🜲    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 30m:       | 49.0   | -        | V        | HF4: | 56.2  | -        | VHF1    | 1: 56 | 2 🜲    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 20m:       | 48.0   | -        | V        | HF5: | 56.2  | ÷        | VHF1    | 2: 56 | 2 🛟    | ]      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 17m:       | 47.0   | -        | V        | HF6: | 56.2  | ÷        | VHF1    | 3: 56 | 2 🜲    |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| 15m:       | 46.5   | <b>+</b> |          |      |       |          |         |       |        | 4      |      |         |       |       |      |
| 12m:       | 46.0   | +        |          |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| 10m:       | 43.5   | <b>+</b> |          |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| 6m:        | 43.0   | <b></b>  |          |      | Res   | et       |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
|            |        |          |          |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
|            |        |          |          |      |       |          |         |       |        |        |      |         |       |       |      |
|            |        |          |          |      |       |          |         | _     | _      |        |      |         |       |       |      |
| Reset Data | base   | Impo     | rt Datab | ase  | E     | xport I  | Databas | e     |        | OK     |      | Car     | icel  |       | Appl |

This form sets the gain of the TX on a per-band basis. It is used when calculating the drive level to achieve the expected power output.

These should be adjusted to optimise the TX power levels: the default figures will be approximate. Selected a required output level, measure the power out and adjust these settings until the desired power is achieved. To minimise excessive heat generation, it is suggested that 10W-20W max should be used.

A smaller number entered here will cause the power output to <u>rise</u>.

#### 6.6.2 Watt Meter

| I Setup  | -          |       | ×     |
|--|------------|-------|-------|
| General Audio Display DSP Transmit PA Settings Appearance Keyboard C   | AT Control | Tests |       |
| PA Gain Watt Meter   |            |       |       |
| 100 Watt Meter Trim  |            |       |       |
| 10W: 10.0 🜩 80W: 80.0 🜩  |            |       |       |
| 20W: 20.0 + 90W: 90.0 +  |            |       |       |
| 30W: 30.0 + 100W: 100.0 +  |            |       |       |
| 40W: 40.0 🜲  |            |       |       |
| 50W: 50.0 🜲  |            |       |       |
| 60W: 60.0 🚖  |            |       |       |
| 70W: 70.0 🚖  |            |       |       |
| Reset PA Values  |            |       |       |
| Begin with all spinners set equal to their labelled value.<br>For each spinner, from minimum to maximum, adjust the output power |            |       | ^     |
| such that your CALIBRATED EXTERNAL METER is equal to the spinner   |            |       |       |
| After completing measurements for all spinners, enter your   |            |       |       |
| POWER EXCEEDING THE RATING OF YOUR RADIO!  |            |       | ~     |
| Reset Database Import Database Export Database OK  | Cancel     | 4     | Apply |

These settings allow the TX power reading multimeter to be calibrated for the output range 10W-100W. Instructions are provided on the form.

### 6.7 Appearance Settings Tabs

These tabs allow the colours for different parts of the console display to be changed, to personalise its appearance. These settings are generally self-explanatory.

| General | Audio Di   | splay DS | P Transmit  | PA Settings     | Appearance | Keyboard C | AT Control | Tests |  |
|---------|------------|----------|-------------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|-------|--|
| General | RX Display | y Meter  | TX Display  | Collapsible Dis | play       |            |            |       |  |
| Skins   |            |          | VFO         |                 | Band Data  |            |            |       |  |
| IK3VI   | G Special  | $\sim$   | Inactive:   | -               | Inactive:  | -          |            | Font  |  |
|         |            |          | Active:     | -   -           | Active:    | -          |            |       |  |
| Buttor  | n 🗖        |          | Background  | t: 🔳 🗸          | Out Of Bar | nd: 🔳 🗸    |            |       |  |
| Selec   | ted:       |          | Small 3     | Digits          | Backgroun  | nd: 🔳 🗸    |            |       |  |
|         |            |          | Small Colo  |                 |            |            |            |       |  |
|         |            |          | Info Color: | -               |            |            |            |       |  |
|         |            |          |             |                 |            |            |            |       |  |
|         |            |          |             |                 |            |            |            |       |  |
|         |            |          |             |                 |            |            |            |       |  |

| Skins           | "Skins" are sets of bitmap files which change the appearance of the background |
|-----------------|--|
|                 | and buttons on the console. This selects which set is displayed.               |
| Button selected | Sets the colour of selected / active buttons on the various forms              |
| VFO             | Changes the display of different elements in each VFO box.                     |

| Band Data | Changes the colour of text and background in the "band data" box below the VFO   |
|-----------|--|
|           | frequency.   |
| LED Font  | If ticked, uses a 7-segment-like font for VFO frequency (This seems to have been |
|           | superseded in release 7.2.7 and now shows a larger font)                         |

#### 6.7.2 RX display Tab

| General RX Display Meter | TX Display | Collapsible Display | /     |           |                          |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------------|-------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Panadapter               | Alpha      | Grid                |       | Alpha     | Cursor/Peak Readout      |
| Main RX<br>Filter Color: | 1.1.1.1.1  | Background:         |       | • • • • • | Peak Text:               |
| TX Filter<br>Color:      |            | V-Grid:             |       | 1.1.1     | Background:              |
| Band Edge: 📕 💌           |            | V-Grid Fine:        |       | 1 1 1 1 1 |                          |
| MultiRX<br>Filter Color: |            | H-Grid:             | •     |           | Waterfall<br>Show Filter |
| MultiRX<br>Zero Line:    |            | Zero Line:          | -     |           | Show Zero Line           |
| GrayLine Color:          |            | Text:               |       |           | Show TX Filter           |
| 🗹 Display Grid           |            | Data Line:          |       |           |                          |
| Show Freq Offset         |            | Line Width:         | 1.0 🖨 |           |                          |
| Show Zero Line           |            | Data Fill:          | -     |           |                          |
|                          |            |                     |       |           |                          |
|                          |            |                     |       |           |                          |
|                          |            |                     |       |           |                          |

This form controls the appearance of the main RX display.

| Panadapter  | Controls how the m   | nain panadapter display area is drawn. Colours for several items                            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------|----------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|             | Alpha                | Sets transparency for an object – fully transparent to the left, fully opaque to the right. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | Display Grid         | When ticked, the display grid is drawn; left blank if unticked.                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | Show Freq Offset     | When ticked, shows frequency offset from display centre rathe                               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |                      | than absolute frequency   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | Show Zero Line       | When ticked, shows the VFO frequency as a red vertical line                                 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Grid        | Controls how the g   | rid is drawn.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Cursor/peak | Controls the colour  | of the readout text under the display. To the left, the frequency                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| readout     | offset, amplitude a  | nd absolute frequency of the cursor position are shown. To the                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | right, the same valu | ies for the current peak signal are shown.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Waterfall   | Show Filter          | When ticked the RX filter passband is shown on the waterfall                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |                      | display section   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | Show Zero line       | When ticked the RX tuned frequency is shown as a vertical line                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             |                      | on the waterfall display section  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|             | Show TX Filter       | When ticked yells bars show the TF filter setting in the waterfall display                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| 6.7.3 Meter Tab   |  |   |                        |             |       |       |
|---|--|---|------------------------|-------------|-------|-------|
| 🛄 Setup   |  |   |                        | -           |       | ×     |
| General Audio Display DSP<br>General RX Display Meter T)<br>Meter Type: Edge V<br>Digital Text: V<br>Digital<br>Background: V | Transmit PA Settings<br>(Display Collapsible Display Collapsible Display)<br>Original Style<br>Left Color: | Appearance<br>olay<br>Edge Sty<br>Low Col<br>High Col<br>Backgro<br>Indicator | Keyboard<br>//e<br>or: | CAT Control | Tests | ~     |
| Renat Database Instant Database   | Europe Databas   | Signal Hi<br>Backgrou   | istory<br>und:         | • • • • •   | •     | hash. |
| Reset Database Import Databa  | Export Databas   | se  | ОК                     | Cancel      |       | Apply |

This form displays how the multimeter is drawn.

| Meter Type     | Selects between two meter styles:   |
|----------------|---|
|                | Original Selects a bargraph type display.   |
|                | Edge Selects a moving needle type display   |
| Digital Text   | Sets the colour of text shown above the multimeter                                  |
| Digital        | Selects the background colour for the digital text box                              |
| Background     |   |
| Original Style | Selects how the original style meter is drawn. The colour of the bargraph           |
|                | segments can vary from left to right.   |
| Edge Style     | Selects how the Edge Style multimeter is drawn.                                     |
| Signal History | Selects the colour to be used for signal history if enabled in the                  |
|                | Setup>Display>General tab (section 6.3.1). The slider sets its transparency: to the |
|                | right makes the history opaque.   |

### 6.7.4 TX display Tab

| General Audio Dis<br>General RX Display<br>Panadapter<br>TX Filter<br>Color: | play DSP<br>Meter TXT<br>Alp | Transmit PA<br>Display Collap | Settings Ap   | pearance | Keyboard ( | CAT Control | Tests                          |  |
|--|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|----------|------------|-------------|--------------------------------|--|
| General RX Display<br>Panadapter<br>TX Filter<br>Color:                      | Meter TX I                   | Display Collap                | sible Display   |          |            |             |                                |  |
| Panadapter<br>TX Filter<br>Color:  | Alp                          | ha Gr                         |   |          |            |             |                                |  |
| Data Line<br>Data Line<br>Width:   | 5.0 \$                       | H-<br>Ze<br>Ba                | id<br>ackground:<br>-Grid:<br>-Grid Fine:<br>-Grid:<br>ero Line:<br>ext:<br>and Edge: |          | Alpha      | Waterfa     | ıll<br>v Filter<br>v Zero Line |  |

Selects how the TX display is drawn.

| Panadapter | Controls how the m can be selected. | ain panadapter display area is drawn. Colours for several items                                 |
|------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|            | TX Filter Colour                    | Shows the colour with which the TX filter width is shown; Alpha sets the transparency.          |
|            | Data Line                           | Sets the colour of the spectrum display trace showing peak TX envelope vs frequency             |
|            | Data line width                     | sets the line width for the TX envelope, in pixels  |
| Grid       | Controls how the gr                 | rid is drawn.   |
| Waterfall  | Show Filter                         | When ticked the RX filter passband is shown on the waterfall display section                    |
|            | Show Zero line                      | When ticked the RX tuned frequency is shown as a vertical line on the waterfall display section |

#### 6.7.5 Collapsible Display Tab



This form controls the top/bottom bars in the "collapsed" displays

| Top Controls           | Shows the "classic" top display bar      |
|------------------------|--|
| Band controls          | Shows the band buttons below the display |
| Mode controls          | Shows the mode buttons below the display |
| Andromeda Top Controls | Shows the "Andromeda" top bar            |
| Andromeda Button Bar   | Shows the "Andromeda" menu button bar    |

#### 6.8 Keyboard Settings Tabs

| 🛄 Setup                                     |             |        |      |   |        |        |        |                    |                                   |                |     |        |                                |  | _                     |       |      | × |
|---|-------------|--------|------|---|--------|--------|--------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|-----|--------|--------------------------------|--|-----------------------|-------|------|---|
| General                                     | Audio       | Displ  | ay   | DSP   | Tran   | nsmit  | PA     | Settings           | . /                               | Appearar       | nce | Keybo  | ard                            | CAT  | Control               | Tests |      |   |
| Tune<br>Digit                               | x.000       | 000    | 0.x  | 00000                                       | 0.0x   | 0000   | 0.0    | 00x000             | 0.0                               | 00x00          | 0.0 | 0000x0 | 0.00                           | x000   |                       |       |      |   |
| Up:   | Q           | $\sim$ | W    | ~   | E      | $\sim$ | R      | ~                  | Т                                 | ~              | Y   | ~      | U                              | ~  |                       |       |      |   |
| Down:                                       | А           | $\sim$ | S    | ~   | D      | ~      | F      | $\sim$             | G                                 | $\sim$         | Н   | ~      | J                              | ~  |                       |       |      |   |
| Band<br>Up:<br>Down:<br>RIT<br>Up:<br>Down: | M<br>N<br>0 | >      |      | Filter<br>Up:<br>Down<br>XIT<br>Up:<br>Down | B<br>V | ~      | /<br>/ | Mo<br>U<br>PT<br>T | de<br>Jp:<br>wn:<br>T<br>T<br>Rx: | X<br>Z<br>None |     |        | Spac<br>La<br>PT<br>V(C)<br>Mi | e Bar C<br>ast Btn<br>TT/MO<br>DX<br>ic Mute | Clicke<br>Clicke<br>X | d     |      |   |
| Reset Dat                                   | tabase      | Im     | port | Databa                                      | se     | E      | xpoi   | rt Datab           | ase                               |                |     | OK     |                                | 0  | Cancel                |       | Appl | У |

This form allows the keyboard shortcuts to be edited. The functions available are described in section 4.4.

### 6.9 CAT Control Settings Tabs

| CAT CAT+ I                        | User Interface   | Andromeda                         |                         | -                                    |                             |               |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| CAT Control                       |                  |                                   |                         |                                      |                             |               |
| Enable CA                         | AT               | PTT Control Enable PTT Port: None | Use                     | r Interface Contro<br>Configure MIDI | MIDI When<br>updates/ste    | el<br>≉p<br>€ |
| Baud 1<br>Parity no               | 15200 ~<br>one ~ |                                   | Te<br>Cor               | ist CAT II<br>nmands                 | D as: TS-2000               | ,<br>,        |
| Data 8<br>Stop 1                  | ~                | Always recenter VI                | FOs<br>B/USB<br>Command | RTTY O                               | ffset                       |               |
| FocusMaster                       |                  |                                   |                         | Ena                                  | able Offset VFO A           | L.            |
| Mode No<br>N1MM Port Window Title | 12060 Delay      | ∽<br>(mS)2000                     | ZZSN                    | DIGI<br>2125                         | able Offset VFO B<br>L DIGL | ,<br>•        |

These settings allow external serial devices to communicate with THETIS. Devices of various types are available.

| CAT Control  | Sets the COM port, baud rate, parity, number of data bits and number of stop<br>bits for a single CAT serial connection. When selected, click Enable.  |
|--|--|
|  | erase its code!  |
| PTT control  | Selects a COM port for which the strobe inputs can be used to initiate PTT. See section 7.7.1.1 for instructions on connecting a PTT switch.   |
| User interface   | Allows a Midi controller to be used to control Thetis. This sections allows you to   |
| Controller   | establish a connection and edit the control assignments. See section 7.8.3 for a   |
|  | description of this interface.   |
| ID as  | Sets the radio type that is reported as the CAT controller, in response to an "ID"   |
|  | CAT command  |
|  | extreeminand   |
| Test CAT   | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)   |
| Test CAT<br>commands   | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns  | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b>   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB   | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5) If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b> respectively   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood  | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b><br>respectively<br>When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends  |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command  | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b><br>respectively<br>When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends<br>messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command  | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b><br>respectively<br>When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends<br>messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at<br>the other end does not have to "poll" for the frequency.   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command<br>Focus Master                        | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b><br>respectively<br>When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends<br>messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at<br>the other end does not have to "poll" for the frequency.<br>Relates to working with the N1MM contest logging program.  |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command<br>Focus Master<br>ZZSN                | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)         If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b> respectively         When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at the other end does not have to "poll" for the frequency.         Relates to working with the N1MM contest logging program.         Sets the serial number reported in response to a ZZSN command. Useful if you   |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command<br>Focus Master<br>ZZSN                | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)         If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b> respectively         When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at the other end does not have to "poll" for the frequency.         Relates to working with the N1MM contest logging program.         Sets the serial number reported in response to a ZZSN command. Useful if you have several radios.  |
| Test CAT<br>commands<br>Dig L/U returns<br>LSB/USB<br>Allow Kenwood<br>Al command<br>Focus Master<br>ZZSN<br>RTTY Offset | Opens the Test CAT commands form (see section 6.9.5)<br>If ticked, the digital mode settings <b>DIGL</b> and <b>DIGU</b> are reported as <b>LSB</b> and <b>USB</b><br>respectively<br>When ticked, the "AI" CAT command is enabled. Thereafter the CAT port sends<br>messages automatically whenever the radio's frequency is tuned. The device at<br>the other end does not have to "poll" for the frequency.<br>Relates to working with the N1MM contest logging program.<br>Sets the serial number reported in response to a ZZSN command. Useful if you<br>have several radios.<br>Sets frequency offsets for the reported VFO frequency in RTTY modes. This can |

| AT CAT+ User Interface And | Transmit PA Settings Appearance<br>dromeda | Keyboard CAT Control Tests |  |
|----------------------------|--|----------------------------|--|
| CAT2 Control               | CAT3 Control                               | CAT4 Control               |  |
| Port: None V               | CAT3 Port: None  V                         | Port: None V               |  |
| Baud 115200 ~              | Baud 115200 ~                              | Baud 115200 ~              |  |
| Parity none ~              | Parity none ~                              | Parity none ∨              |  |
| Data 8 ~                   | Data 8 ~                                   | Data 8 ~                   |  |
| Stop 1 ~                   | Stop 1 ~                                   | Stop 1 V                   |  |
|                            |  |                            |  |

These settings allow THETIS to connect to three additional external devices using CAT commands. The serial port properties for these are identical to those on the main CAT form.

#### 6.9.3 User Interface

| 🛄 Setup | )          |             |            |         |             |            |          | _           |       | ×     |
|---------|------------|-------------|------------|---------|-------------|------------|----------|-------------|-------|-------|
| General | Audio D    | isplay [    | DSP Tran   | ismit P | A Settings  | Appearance | Keyboard | CAT Control | Tests |       |
| CAT     | CAT+ Us    | ser Interfa | ace Andron | neda    |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         | HttpServer |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         | On: Bas    | sic         | Port:      | Ŗ       | efresh Rate | User       | Name:    | Password:   |       |       |
|         | OR         |             | 8081       | ÷ 3     | 00          | powe       | ersdr    | powersdr    |       |       |
|         | On: Adv    | vanced      |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
|         |            |             |            |         |             |            |          |             |       |       |
| Reset D | atabase    | Import I    | Database   | Exp     | ort Databas | e          | ОК       | Cancel      |       | Apply |
|         |            |             |            | -4      |             |            |          |             |       |       |

These settings allow THETIS to stream a basic display to a web browser.

On: BasicIf ticked, turns on a basis user interfaceOn: advancedIf ticked, turns on a more advanced user interface

Port Sets the IP port number to be used. Point your web browser to //localhost:8081 to see a connection. To access from another PC you will need this port forwarded by your internet router.

Refresh Rate Sets the update rate, in milliseconds.

| General Audio   | Display    | DSP  | Transmit  | PA Settin   | gs Appearance   | Keyboard   | CAT Control          | Tests |  |
|---|------------|------|-----------|-------------|---|--|----------------------|-------|--|
| CAT CAT+<br>Andromeda<br>C Enable Pane<br>Port: COM3<br>Edit Contro | User Inter | face | Andromeda | E<br>E<br>E | Andromeda Optior<br>Gain Form Aut<br>Diversity Form<br>Diversity Form<br>Allow Fast Tur | ns<br>to Show/Hide<br>n Auto Show<br>n Landscape<br>ning | e<br>/Hide<br>Format |       |  |
| Andromeda: h  | /w=1 s/w=  | =6   |           |             |   |  |                      |       |  |

These settings allow THETIS to connect to an Andromeda front panel controller using CAT commands.

| Port              | Selects the COM port for connection to Andromeda                                       |
|-------------------|--|
| Enable Panel      | When clicked, a connection is established  |
| Edit Controls     | Brings up the Andromeda Settings Editor form (see section 6.12). This allows           |
|                   | the assignments for rotary controls, pushbuttons, indicators and softkey               |
|                   | menus to be edited   |
| Firmware version  | Shows the hardware and software version reported by the Andromeda panel                |
|                   | controller.  |
| Gain Form Auto    | If ticked, the gain settings form will automatically be shown if a rotary control      |
| Show/Hide         | is turned that controls a setting that is on the form. If there is no activity it will |
|                   | auto hide after 10 seconds. It gives a quick way to see all the gain settings.         |
| Diversity Form    | If ticked, the Diversity form will automatically be shown if a rotary control for      |
| Auto Show/Hide    | diversity gain or phase is turned. If there is no activity it will auto hide after 10  |
|                   | seconds.   |
| Diversity Form    | If ticked, the diversity form is shown in a landscape (wide) format. This fits         |
| Landscape format  | better to small screens.   |
| Allow Fast Tuning | If ticked, the VFO knob tune rate increases as it is turned faster. Above approx.      |
|                   | 1 turn per second, its speed increases to allow fast movement across the band.         |

#### 6.9.5 CAT Tests Tab

|   | desc           | active | nsetparms | ngetparms | nansparms | code |  |
|---|----------------|--------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------|--|
|   | antenna tuner  | false  | 3         | 0         | 3         | AC   |  |
|   | af gain        | true   | 4         | 1         | 4         | AG   |  |
|   | auto informati | true   | 1         | 0         | 1         | AI   |  |
|   | auto notch lev | false  | 3         | 0         | 3         | AL   |  |
|   | auto mode on   | false  | 1         | 0         | 1         | AM   |  |
|   | select antenn  | false  | 1         | 0         | 1         | AN   |  |
|   | asc function o | false  | 3         | 1         | 3         | AR   |  |
|   | auto mode fu   | false  | 15        | 3         | 15        | AS   |  |
|   | beat cancelle  | false  | 1         | 0         | 1         | BC   |  |
|   | move down b    | true   | 0         | -1        | -1        | RD   |  |
| С | AT Command     |        |           | E         | xecute    |      |  |
| С | AT Response    |        |           |           |           |      |  |

This form provides a method for developers to test the operation of CAT commands. The top half of the form lists the commands recognised by THETIS and the parameters they require.

A command can be typed into the **CAT command** box; when execute is pressed that command will be executed as if it had originated from an external device. The generated response it provided in the response box below.

| Setup   |   | - 🗆 ×  |
|---|---|--|
| General Audio Display DSP Transmit  | PA Settings Appearance Keyboa   | ard CAT Control Tests  |
| Two Tone Test Applied: DSP Output Freq #1: 700 Freq #2: 1900 Level (dB): 0.000 RF Power: 10 Use Drive Power Invert for LS Modes Start | Signal Generator<br>Receive<br>Applied: DSP Input<br>Mode: Radio<br>Level (dB): -50.0 +<br>Freq (Hz): 1000 +<br>Sweep<br>Low (Hz): 0 +<br>High (Hz): 4000 +<br>Rate (Hz/s): 100 + | Transmit<br>Applied: DSP Input<br>Mode: Radio<br>Level (dB): 0.0<br>Freq (Hz): 1000<br>Sweep<br>Low (Hz): 0<br>High (Hz): 4000<br>Rate (Hz/s): 100 |
| Show SEQ log  | ⊠ RX1 □ RX2   | Pulse           Freq (Hz):         10.00 +           Duty Cycle         0.10 +           Trans. (sec)         0.0050 +                             |

This form allows various tests to be carried out.

| Two tone test  | Injects a two-tone test source into the transmitter with specified tones and    |  |  |  |
|----------------|---|--|--|--|
|                | overall power level. Used for TX linearity testing.                             |  |  |  |
|                | Start Initiates the 2 tone transmission.  |  |  |  |
| Receive Signal | Injects a CW tone, swept tone or noise into the receiver. The entered frequency |  |  |  |
| Generator      | is relative to the VFO frequency.   |  |  |  |
|                |   |  |  |  |

|                 | Mode = Radio:  | no test tone  |  |  |
|-----------------|--|---|--|--|
|                 | Mode = Tone:   | single tone injected  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Sweep:  | sweeping tone injected  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Noise:  | noise waveform injected                                       |  |  |
|                 | Mode=Silence:  | no receiver input   |  |  |
| Transmit signal | signal Injects a signal source into the transmitter. The entered frequency is relative |   |  |  |
| generator       | the VFO frequency  | Ι.  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Radio:  | no test tone  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Tone:   | single tone injected  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Sweep:  | sweeping tone injected  |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Noise:  | noise waveform injected                                       |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Sawtooth:   | : Inject a sawtooth ramp, with instant "return to zero"       |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Triangle:   | Inject a triangle signal with symmetrical ramp up and down    |  |  |
|                 | Mode = Pulse:  | Inject a pulsed waveform                                      |  |  |
|                 | Mode=Silence:  | no receiver input   |  |  |
| Show SEQ log    | Opens a window s   | howing a history of ethernet packet sequence errors. Used for |  |  |
|                 | debugging poor co  | onnectivity to your radio hardware.                           |  |  |

#### 6.11 Settings Database

THETIS uses the database.xml file to store user settings. During the initial THETIS install the database.xml file is created and populated with the default THETIS settings. Any user changes to operating settings overwrite the default database.xml settings stored in this file. The database.xml file is located in a location such as:

#### C:\Users\YourName\AppData\Roaming\OpenHPSDR\Thetis

The Setup form contains many settings for operation of THETIS. These are saved into a database when THETIS closes down. There are buttons at the bottom of the Setup for to control the database itself:

| Reset Database  | In the event Thetis operation becomes unstable or functions erratically and you have not yet exported a good database.xml file, your only recourse would be to reset the database.  |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | Resetting the database deletes your existing database.xml file and creates a new database.xml with the same default settings created after the initial Thetis install. You would then need to manually change the default settings to setting of your choice. |
| Import Database | An exported xml file can be imported and its contents will overwrite the previous settings in the database.xml file.  |
|                 | If Thetis becomes unstable or erratic, you could import a known good file such<br>as one of the above export examples: thetis-2-6-9.xml or<br>Thetis02_18_2020.xml.   |
| Export Database | The database.xml file can be exported to a user supplied filename for later recall / import.  |
|                 | You should backup your database.xml file after making any changes to your Thetis settings. For example, you could export the file using filenames such as Thetis-2-6-9.xml or Thetis02_18_2020.xml.   |
| ОК              | Accept all current changes into the database and close the Setup form   |
| Cancel          | Cancels changes and re-loads the current database   |
| Apply           | Apply the current changes to the database but leave the form open.  |

### 6.12 Andromeda Settings Editor

This form is invoked from the setup form to change the control assignments for Andromeda front panel pushbuttons, encoders and indicators. Also the softkey menus at the bottom of the Andromeda display layout can be edited.

This form is involved from the **Edit controls** button on the Menu > setup > CAT control > Andromeda page. It has four display tables: one for each of Encoders, Pushbuttons, Indicators & Menus. Up to 5 command buttons may be visible:

| Reset Data   | Reset all configuration data to default settings. This may be useful if the   |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|
|  | settings have been very badly messed up by accident.                          |  |  |  |
| Save   | Save the changes made. This saves the Andromeda settings file.                |  |  |  |
| Close  | Close the editor form   |  |  |  |
| Insert Menu Insert a menu with 8 menu commands at the selected loc |   |  |  |  |
|  | selection arrow is toward the end of a menu, it will insert after the current |  |  |  |
|  | menu. If toward the start, it inserts before the current menu).               |  |  |  |
|  | This is only visible when the Menu tab is selected.                           |  |  |  |
| Delete Menu  | Delete the menu (with 8 menu commands) at the currently selected location.    |  |  |  |
|  | This is only visible when the Menu tab is selected.                           |  |  |  |

#### 6.12.1 Encoder Tab

| Androme  | eda Settings Editor          |                    | - | × |
|----------|------------------------------|--------------------|---|---|
| Encoders | S Pushbuttons Indicators Men | IS                 |   |   |
| Encoder  | Encoder Action               | Selected RX        |   | ^ |
| ▶ 1      | RX AF gain                   | RX1 only           |   |   |
| 2        | RX AGC Level                 | RX1 only           |   |   |
| 3        | RX AF gain                   | RX2 only           |   |   |
| 4        | RX AGC Level                 | RX2 only           |   |   |
| 5        | RX IF filter high cut        | Default setting    |   |   |
| 6        | RX IF filter low cut         | Default setting    |   |   |
| 7        | RX diversity gain            | Default setting    |   |   |
| 8        | RX diversite phase           | Default setting    |   |   |
| 9        | RIT                          | Default setting    |   |   |
| 10       | No function No fun           | ction pult setting |   |   |
| 11       | Multifunction                | Default setting    |   |   |
| 12       | TX drive                     | Default setting    |   |   |
| 10       | Nie Zusskies                 | Diffine contract   |   | ~ |
| I        | Reset Data Save              | Close              |   |   |

This form edits settings assigned to rotary encoder controls. If you have "dual shaft" encoders with two controls, the uppermost control will be the first control (eg encoder 1) and the lower knob will the next one (eg encoder 2). The VFO encoder cannot be reconfigured using this form.

| Encoder number | Displays all the possible encoder numbers. To select settings for a particular encoder, either:  |
|----------------|--|
|                | • Use the mouse to click in the number for that encoder, or  |
|                | <ul> <li>Turn the encoder and the appropriate row will be selected.</li> </ul>   |
| Encoder action | Displays the action that has been assigned to this encoder.  |
|                | To change the control action: click in the cell, twice. A combo box control will appear. Click its down arrow to show a list of the options that can be assigned. Click an option to select it.  |
| Selected RX    | <ul> <li>This setting allows the control to be assigned to a specific receiver. This control is also a combo box and is used in the same way.</li> <li>Some controls are not associated with a receiver (eg "TX Mic Gain") and "default acting" should be calented.</li> </ul> |
|                | <ul> <li>Receiver controls can be assigned to RX1 only, RX2 only, or if "default setting" is chosen the control will choose RX1 if VFO A is selected, or RX2 if VFO B is selected.</li> </ul>  |

#### 6.12.2 Pushbutton Tab

| • | Androm  | eda Settings Editor            |  |  | — | $\times$ |
|---|---------|--------------------------------|--|--|---|----------|
|   | Encoder | s Pushbuttons Indicators Menus |  |  |   |          |
|   | Button  | Pushbutton Action              | Selected RX                                      |  |   | ^        |
|   | ▶ 1     | RX Mute on/off                 | RX1 only   |  |   |          |
|   | 2       | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 3       | RX Mute on/off                 | RX2 only   |  |   |          |
|   | 4       | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 5       | Reset variable filters         | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 6       | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 7       | RX Diversity on/off            | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 8       | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 9       | Clear RIT & XIT                | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 10      | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 11      | Multi Encoder pushbutton       | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 12      | No function                    | Default setting                                  |  |   |          |
|   | 10      | KI . Z                         | Distantia and and and and and and and and and an |  |   | 14       |
|   |         | Reset Data Save                | Close  |  |   |          |

| Button number     | Displays all the possible pushbutton numbers (1-50).  |
|-------------------|---|
|                   | To select settings for a particular pushbutton, either:   |
|                   | <ul> <li>Use the mouse to click in the number for that pushbutton, or</li> </ul>  |
|                   | • Press the pushbutton on the front panel and the appropriate row will be selected.   |
| Pushbutton action | Displays the action that has been assigned to this pushbutton.  |
|                   | To change the control action: click in the cell, twice. A combo box control will appear. Click its down arrow to show a list of the options that can be assigned. Click an option to select it. |
| Selected RX       | This setting allows the control to be assigned to a specific receiver. This control is also a combo box and is used in the same way.  |
|                   | • Some controls are not associated with a receiver (eg "Clear RIT") and "default setting" should be selected  |
|                   | • Receiver controls can be assigned to RX1 only, RX2 only, or if "default setting" is chosen the control will choose RX1 if VFO A is selected, or RX2 if VFO B is selected.                     |

# 6.12.3 Indicator Tab

|           |                            |                        | _    |       |
|-----------|----------------------------|------------------------|------|-------|
| Encoders  | Pushbuttons Indicators Men | us                     | <br> | <br>_ |
| Indicator | Indicators shows:          | Selected RX            |      |       |
| ▶ 1       | MOX active                 | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 2         | ATU has tune solution      | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 3         | TUNE active                | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 4         | Puresignal selected        | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 5         | Diversity enabled          | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 6         | Band select shift pressed  | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 7         | VFO Click tune active      | RX selected by VFO A/B |      |       |
| 8         | RIT selected               | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 9         | XIT selected               | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 10        | VFO A selected             | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 11        | VFO locked                 | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 12        | No function                | Not RX dependent       |      |       |
| 10        | NL C C                     |                        |      |       |
| Indicator number | Displays all the possible indicator numbers (1-20).   |
|------------------|---|
|                  | To select settings for a particular indicator: Use the mouse to click in the number for that pushbutton   |
| Indicator Shows: | Displays the indication that has been assigned to this indicator.   |
|                  | To change the indication: click in the cell, twice. A combo box control will appear. Click its down arrow to show a list of the options that can be assigned. Click an option to select it. |
| Selected RX      | This setting allows the indicator to be assigned to a specific receiver. This control is also a combo box and is used in the same way.  |
|                  | • Some controls are not associated with a receiver (eg "MOX Active") and "Not RX dependent" should be selected  |
|                  | • Receiver controls can be assigned to RX1 only, RX2 only, or if "RX selected by VFO A/B" is chosen the control will choose RX1 if VFO A is selected, or RX2 if VFO B is selected.          |

## 6.12.4 Menu Tab

| Androm | eda Settings Editor            |                |                 | - □ >              |
|--------|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| Encode | s Pushbuttons Indicators Menus |                |                 |                    |
| Menu   | Menu button action             | Button Text:   | Selected RX     | Link to ^<br>Menu: |
| ▶ 1    | Change menu row                | Quick Menu     | Default setting | 2                  |
| 1      | Noise Reduction                | NR             | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | Noise Blanker                  | NB             | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | Spectral Noise Blanker         | SNB            | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | Auto Notch Filter              | ANF            | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | RX AGC step                    | AGC Step       | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | Step RX attenuator             | Atten Step     | Default setting | 0                  |
| 1      | Toggle A/B VFO                 | Toggle A/B     | Default setting | 0                  |
| 2      | Change menu row                | RX Menu        | Default setting | 3                  |
| 2      | RX Diversity on/off            | Diversity      | Default setting | 0                  |
| 2      | Show Diversity form            | Diversity Form | Default setting | 0                  |
| 2      | Show slider form               | Gain Form      | Default setting | 0 ~                |
|        | Reset Data Save                | Close          | Insert Menu     | Delete Menu        |

In this form, the softkey menus at the bottom of the screen in Andromeda view can be edited. A menu consists of a set of 8 softkey settings.

| Menu number  | Displays all the current menu entries. Menus (with a set of 8 softkey settings) can be inserted and deleted. |
|--------------|--|
|              |  |
|              | To select settings for a particular menu, use the mouse to click in the number                               |
|              | for that menu.   |
| Menu button  | Displays the action that has been assigned to this softkey.  |
| action       |  |
|              | To change the softkey action: click in the cell, twice. A combo box control will                             |
|              | appear. Click its down arrow to show a list of the options that can be assigned.                             |
|              | Click an option to select it.  |
| Button Text  | The text that will be shown on the softkey. This is selected automatically when                              |
|              | a new softkey setting is chosen.   |
|              |  |
|              | Some menu types have the text altered to indicate RX1/RX2 and the current                                    |
|              | state. However for some controls it may be appropriate to edit the default                                   |
|              | text. For example "Change menu row" softkey is used to step between menus;                                   |
|              | it may be appropriate to edit its text to show the name of the current menu or                               |
|              | new menu, according to preference.   |
| Selected RX  | This setting allows the softkey to be assigned to a specific receiver. This control                          |
|              | is also a combo box and is used in the same way.   |
|              |  |
|              | • Some softkeys are not associated with a receiver (eg "Clear RIT") and                                      |
|              | "default setting" should be selected   |
|              | • Receiver controls can be assigned to RX1 only, RX2 only, or if "default                                    |
|              | setting" is chosen the control will choose RX1 if VFO A is selected, or RX2 if                               |
|              | VFU B is selected.   |
| Link to Menu | This gives a destination menu number for the "change menu row" softkey.                                      |

Note that the form tries to alter "link to menu" values if a menu is inserted or deleted. It will try to leave the link to the row that had been linked before the insertion or deletion. However it is important to check that the links are what you intend!

# 7 Setting Up Thetis

# 7.1 Setting Up Microphone Levels

The TX audio chain contains a lot of features to control and enhance audio performance. It is very important to set these up in a logical order. This guide gets you "up to speed" with the basic settings. The more advanced settings, to enhance audio performance further, are covered in the next section.

Pay attention to the use of "TX profiles" below. They will avoid you having to repeat this every time!

- 1. Connect a suitably rated dummy load to your antenna connector.
- 2. Set the **Drive** level to a relatively low power (say <u>5-10</u>, meaning 5-10W of RF)
- 3. Select an appropriate audio mode. Begin with <u>USB</u> or <u>LSB</u> depending on your band.
- 4. Connect a suitable microphone to your radio. (It is also possible to use microphones connected to your PC. See section 3.7).<sup>2</sup>
- 5. Depending on your radio: you may need to set the microphone connections on the <u>Menu ></u> <u>Setup > Audio</u> form, or may need to adjust jumpers accordingly. Consult your radio manual.
- 6. Reset all of the Tx audio path settings:
  - a. Click the console **MIC** button to <u>on</u>
    - b. Click the console VOX, COMP, DEXP, TX EQ buttons to off
    - c. Untick **20dB Mic Boost** on the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u> form
    - d. Select Mic In as the input on that same form
    - e. Untick CESSB Overshoot Control on the same form
    - f. Tick Use peak meter readings for TX COMP and ALC on the same form
    - g. Tick Auto Save TX profile on THETIS close on the same form
    - h. Tick Auto save TX profile on change on the same form
    - i. Click Save by profile name and give it a new name: eg "PC Headset"
    - j. Untick **leveler** on the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP >AGC/ALC</u> form
    - k. Set ALC max gain to <u>0</u> on that same form
    - I. Untick **EER** on the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > EER</u> form
    - m. Untick CFC enable, Post-CFC EQ enable, phase rotator enable on the <u>Menu > Setup</u> <u>> DSP > CFC</u> form
- 7. Select the **TX meter mode** to <u>MIC</u>
- 8. Key the radio by pressing **MOX** on the console
- 9. Speak normally into the microphone
- 10. Adjust the console **MIC** gain slider until the TX meter consistently reads 0dB for speech peaks. (The meter is peak reading).
- 11. Return to RX mode by pressing **MOX** again.
- 12. If you were not able to reach 0dB: tick **20dB boost** in the <u>Menu > Setup > Audio</u> form and try again. (This may well be required for a dynamic microphone).
- 13. Assuming that has worked OK: you now have a working microphone connection.
- 14. Set the TX filter bandwidth appropriately. Min <u>200</u>Hz, max <u>2800</u>Hz suggested for SSB as a starting point.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Note that some PC headset microphones will not work if simply plugged in. It is common for them to have the "tip" and "ring" contacts connected together. You may need to make an adapter which breaks the "ring" connection.

# 7.1.1 Adjusting the Equaliser

Different microphones have different characteristics, and the equaliser can adjust for them. For example a dynamic microphone may have enhanced low frequency response, while an "electret" type microphone may have better mid-range response. Good HF SSB audio should have a roughly flat response between 300Hz and around 2700Hz. To adjust:

- 1. Make sure your dummy load is still connected, and you have a low power level selected
- 2. Click the console **TX EQ** button to turn on the equaliser
- 3. Make sure the MON button on the console is not selected
- 4. Select the **TX meter** mode to <u>EQ</u>
- 5. Select the equaliser form using <u>Menu > Equaliser</u>
- 6. In the TX equaliser section: set all sliders to <u>O</u>dB, and keep the form open.
- 7. Key the radio by pressing **MOX** on the console
- 8. Speak normally into your microphone, while watching the screen
- 9. You should see your TX audio displayed.
- 10. Use the equaliser sliders to get the audio response roughly flat from 300 to 2700Hz
- 11. Use the overall gain slider to make the TX meter show OdB
- 12. Return to RX mode by pressing **MOX** again.
- 13. Save your TX profile.

#### 7.1.2 Adjusting the Leveler

- 1. Make sure your dummy load is still connected, and you have a low power level selected
- 2. Tick leveler on the <u>Menu > Setup form > DSP >AGC/ALC</u> form
- 3. Select the **TX meter** mode to <u>Leveler</u>
- 4. Key the radio by pressing **MOX** on the console
- 5. Adjust **Max Gain (dB)** on the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > AGC/ALC</u> form so that your voice peaks are reaching 0dB regularly.
- 6. Return to RX mode by pressing **MOX** again.
- 7. Save your TX profile.

#### 7.1.3 Checking the Audio

- 1. Make sure your dummy load is still connected, and you have a low power level selected
- 2. Unselect the Puresignal (PS-A) button on the console
- 3. Click the MON button on the console to on
- 4. Preferably, connect headphones instead of speakers
- 5. Key the radio by pressing **MOX** on the console and speak normally
- 6. You should now hear your audio through speakers/headphone.
- 7. Return to RX mode by pressing **MOX** again.
- 8. Save your TX profile.

If you have problems: the likely cause is the microphone connection. Check with your radio's manual.

## 7.2 Speech Compression

The microphone level settings will have established a working microphone connection, but won't have optimised the audio. It is recognised that normal speech has a very high peak-to-average ratio, leading to low mean TX power. There are several compression algorithms available to enhance the

average power while keeping the peak unchanged, which will have the effect of enhancing communication range.

CFC Introduction: The CFC (Continuous Frequency Compression) components include the PREEQ, CFC, POST-EQ, and the PHASE ROTATOR. Note that all of the CFC settings are stored within the TX profile that they are saved in to allow unique settings within each TX profile that you create. The steps below are suggestions for establishing a starting point to allow you to use the components to optimize your transmit audio. To start out, if you have COMP enabled in the Console GUI, disable it for now. (Note that you may elect to enable that later if you wish to add a "hard limiting" wideband compression effect to your transmit profile. Enabling CESSB will significantly raise your average power output and further accentuate the hard limiting effect when COMP is enabled.) Also, if Pure Signal is enabled, temporarily disable it so that the audio you hear with MON enabled is not predistorted.

- 1. PRE-EQ: In step 2 of the basic audio chain adjustments above, you set the EQ sliders to produce a relatively flat response for the microphone or audio rack that you are using and have set the Preamp slider so that you do not exceed 0 dB on voice peaks while monitoring the EQ with the TX multimeter. Note that when the CFC option is enabled, the basic EQ will function as the Pre-EQ stage. If you are satisfied that your settings produce a relatively flat audio response, you can move on to the next step.
- 2. CONTINUOUS FREQUENCY COMPRESSOR: In the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > CFC</u> form place a check in the CFC Enable and Post-CFC EQ Enable boxes. The CFC interface offers an over-all gain slider called PRE-COMP and 10 individual sliders that allow you to assign different levels of compression to each assigned frequency point. While listening to your transmit audio with **MON** enabled, adjust the frequency band sliders upward or downward to control the amount of "punch" you wish to add to your voice in each area of the voice spectrum. When you have established settings that produce the desired level of density for your voice, you can change the over-all compression level by adjusting the PRE-COMP slider upward or downward.
- 3. POST-EQ: While listening to your transmitted signal with MON enabled, use the Post-EQ form to tailor your transmit audio's frequency response. Again, you can assign custom frequency values to each of the 10 sliders but it is suggested that you use the defaults initially. The Post- EQ sliders give you complete control over the tonal quality of your signal to enhance clarity, brightness, and low-end response. As a last step, set your TX multimeter to ALC COMP and adjust the POST EQ GAIN slider so that you see several dB of ALC compression as you speak.
- 4. When you are satisfied with your CFC settings, go back to the <u>Menu > Setup > Transmit</u> form and save your profile.
- 5. Additional Adjustments: The TX multimeter has two new meter scales that can be very informative as you experiment with creating transmit profiles. The new <u>CFC</u> meter displays the output level of the CFC components from -30dB to +12dB and the new <u>CFC Comp</u> meter displays peak compression levels that exceed 0dB on a meter scale from 0dB to +25dB. As an example of how to use the new metering, try increasing the PRE-COMP gain slider and decreasing the POST EQ GAIN slider to create more punch and loudness in areas of your audio that you have emphasized with your CFC slider settings. As the PRE-COMP slider is advanced you will see the peak compression level of the multiband compressor increase in the <u>CFC Comp</u> meter. For a less aggressive sounding profile, try reducing the **PRE-COMP** slider until the <u>CFC</u> meter deflects to 0dB on voice peaks and then use the **POST EQ GAIN** slider to make up the difference in over-all gain. The two new meters give a nice visual indication of what is happening as you set the balance between the two CFC gain sliders.

- 6. PHASE ROTATOR: This feature can be used to improve the symmetry of your voice in your transmitted audio. It's a very individual adjustment as everyone's voice has very different symmetry characteristics. The steps below will get you started:
- Set the Panadapter in OpenHPSDR to display the Scope.
- Select a transmit profile that has a fairly wide response and set the mode to LSB or USB.
- While transmitting, enable the phase rotator, and as you speak observe your voice pattern on the Scope display.
- If your voice has more energy above the horizontal zero axis reduce the number of stages until better symmetry is observed.
- If your voice has more energy below the horizontal zero axis increase the number of stages until better symmetry is observed.
- Try setting the FREQ of the Phase Rotator to something other than 338 Hz if you believe most of the energy in your voice is higher or lower.
- When you have found a setting that is symmetrical with similar energy above and below the horizontal zero axis, save your TX profile.

<u>Summary</u>: Remember that while you are operating you can manually toggle COMP on or off to add a hard limiting effect to your transmit audio if desired. If you have enabled CESSB its hard limiting effect will also be present each time COMP is enabled. Remember, if COMP is enabled when you save your Transmit Profile these features will be on by default.

For those who wish to enable the console COMP button and CESSB, excessive output from the CFC components may make your transmitted audio sound somewhat harsh. To minimize this, try reducing the PRE-COMP slider so that the <u>CFC</u> meter displays maximum peaks of 0dB.

Note that when COMP and CESSB are enabled, the output is hard-limited at 0dB as shown with the "ALC Comp" meter. A new adjustment for COMP and CESSB users is available that allows you to exceed 0dB of ALC compression with COMP and CESSB enabled to make it possible to use the look-ahead algorithm at the ALC level to incorporate soft-limiting in the final stage. You can try this new feature by moving to the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > AGC/ALC</u> form and using the new ALC **Max Gain** setting to increase **ALC Comp** in 1dB steps from 1dB to 10dB. Several dB of **ALC Comp** should increase your over-all loudness without added harshness.

Note that these CFC adjustment steps should be considered a starting point for optimizing your transmitted audio. When you have become comfortable with the interface, you might wish to experiment with changing the frequency points for the CFC sliders so they span the transmitted bandwidth of each transmit profile you are working on. As an example, for a 3.0k sideband profile try the following values: 50, 150, 300, 500, 750, 1250, 1750, 2000, 2500, 3000. There's nothing magical about those numbers so experiment with values that give you the best tonal control for your intended bandwidth.

# 7.3 VOX

# 7.3.1 Modes of operation:

- VOX OFF, DEXP OFF—no PTT action, no gating or downward expansion.
- VOX ON, DEXP OFF—PTT action, all gating functions operating except for Expander Ratio (Exp. Ratio), which is effectively set to infinity (a pure gate, no downward expansion).
- VOX OFF, DEXP ON—no PTT action, all gating and expander functions operating.
- VOX ON, DEXP ON—PTT action, all gating and expander functions operating.

## 7.3.2 Basic gate adjustments:

VOX threshold is adjusted with the slider control on the main console user interface in the same manner as previous versions of Thetis. Approximately 15 to 20 dB above normal background noise levels is a good starting point (not including receiver audio; see "Anti-VOX" below).

The remaining controls are found in Setup > DSP > VOX/DE:

- Attack time—after being triggered open the gate gain increases from fully closed to fully open in this amount of time. This adjustment can help soften the start of audio for a more natural sounding result, it is typically kept short for radio applications. 2 ms is a good starting point.
- Hold time—after being triggered closed the gate gain will stay fully open for this amount of time. This is most closely analogous to the old VOX hold time. If re-triggered open this timer resets. Adjust as desired, typical values range around 250ms, which is also a good starting point.
- Release time—after the hold time expires the gate gain decreases from fully open to fully closed in this amount of time. With VOX enabled, PTT releases after this time expires. It can be made longer for a more natural sound, especially when not using VOX, or made shorter for contest or VOX work. Typical values range from 10ms to 250ms. 100ms is a good starting point.
- Det. (detector) Tau—the amount of time the input audio must be over threshold before the gate is triggered open and, with VOX activated, PTT asserted. Making this longer can help filter out extraneous background noises from triggering the gate, such as typing on a keyboard, but it does increase gate latency. 10-20ms is a good starting point.
- Anti-VOX—this feature raises the VOX threshold in real time in concert with receiver audio levels in order to prevent receiver audio emanating from speakers from tripping the VOX threshold. Anti-VOX is not required when using headphones, of course. Note: this is not "noise cancellation", only an adjustment based on sound level.
- Anti-VOX Gain—this is the gain factor used to cause VOX threshold adjustments in concert with receiver audio volume emanating from the radio speaker(s). This value can be positive or negative. Set the value as low as possible but high enough to prevent receiver audio from triggering VOX. It generally helps to set it very low, say -40dB, then work up from there. For average listening levels and RX1 AF or RX2 AF set to 100, a value of -20dB is typical. If the VOX threshold is set using a quiet room (fans and other equipment, but no receiver audio), adjustment in this manner should still allow triggering VOX even when receiver audio is active, e.g. when trying to break into a DX pile-up.
- Anti-VOX Tau—this sets the time constant of the low pass filter applied to the Anti-VOX gain algorithm. Smaller numbers make Anti-VOX more responsive to receiver audio at the expense of making the Anti-VOX gain setting more sensitive (aka "touchy"). 20ms is a good starting place.
- Use VAC Audio—when not checked, Anti-VOX will use both RX1 and RX2 audio (nominally for people using speakers attached to radio hardware). When checked, Anti-VOX will use the audio present on active VAC outputs (nominally for users who are fully "virtualized" i.e. remoted from the hardware).

## 7.3.3 Advanced gate adjustments:

- Side-channel Trigger Filter—when enabled, the actual audio used by the gate trigger detector will be filtered by the combination of the low and high cut filter adjustments. This does NOT affect the audio passed through the gate and sent out over the air, which remains unfiltered. Along with the Det. Tau adjustment, the side-channel filter can be extremely helpful in eliminating false triggers caused by keyboarding, bumping or moving the microphone around, cats jumping on the desk, etc. Adjust this to match up with the dominant frequencies of your voice. A low cut of 500Hz and a high cut of 1500Hz is a good starting point.
- Audio look-ahead—this adjusts a delay line such that the VOX/gate trigger decision can be made on a first syllable but that first syllable will not be lost because the gate acts on the audio coming out of the delay line. For best results this setting should be greater than the

sum of the Det. Tau setting AND the RF Delay setting (in Setup > General > Options) PLUS 10ms. Used properly, people may not even realize you are using VOX. The downside is that there is some latency so it may not be the optimum choice for contesting or the like. Proper adjustment depends on how quickly you speak, but a good starting place is 60ms.

• Hyst. (hysteresis) Ratio—to prevent rapid triggering/un-triggering of the gate this is the difference between the threshold for triggering the gate open or closed. 2dB is a good starting point.

# 7.3.4 Expander adjustment:

Exp. Ratio—this is the only expander adjustment, and this is the slope of the audio gain line from the gate threshold to fully closed. For a hard, "pure" gate, this can be made equal to 30dB. A more typical value would be 10dB which results in a 10:1 slope (fairly steep). For those who prefer a softer, more gradual transition (usually those who are not using VOX, maybe someone who just wants to suppress background fan noise), this can be made very gradual. For example a value of 3dB will provide a 2:1 gain slope.

In an "ideal" transmitter your linear amplifier would be exactly that: linear. Unfortunately no real amplifier ever is, and Intermodulation Distortion (IMD) to the transmitted signal is inevitable. If uncorrected (as with almost all amateur band transceivers) this will lead to unintended emissions above and below your TX signal which could easily be only 25- 30dB below your signal. In a crowded band those could cause real problems.

# 7.4 Setting Up Virtual Audio and COM Ports

To use data mode software, drivers are needed to provide an audio and a serial connection between two programs running on the same computer. We need two kinds of driver:

- A virtual serial port there are several program that do this; the strongly recommended ones are "Virtual Serial Port Driver" by Eltima software (paid for) or "Com0Com" which is free. In this case we will use Com0Com, but both are similar. Visit the download website <u>https://sourceforge.net/projects/com0com/</u>, download the code and install it. Documentation is available at <u>http://com0com.sourceforge.net/</u>
- A Virtual Audio Cable. You can use freely downloadable software, such as Voicemeeter Banana or purchase a different program – <u>https://vac.muzychenko.net/en/purchase.htm</u>. You will receive an email with a link to download the full version.

In this example we will use Com0Com and Voicemeeter Banana.

## 7.4.1 Virtual COM Using Com0Com

- 1. Run the Com0Com setup utility from your windows menu. That will open a form showing the connection available.
- By default the program will have created two pairs of ports: for example "CNCA0 & CNCB0" and "COM6 & COM4". Delete one pair; rename the other two to COM21 and COM22 to make sure they are different from any real COM ports. Leave the other settings unchanged.
- 3. That's it! PC programs will now see COM21 and COM22 as usable serial ports.

| fb. e   |  |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|--|---|
| Setup for com0com   |  | _  |  | ×   |
| Witual Pott Pair 0     ⊕ COM21     ⊕ COM22     ⊕ COM22     ⊕ Vitual Pott Pair 1 | COM21<br>use Ports class<br>emulate baud rate<br>enable buffer overrun<br>enable plug-in mode<br>enable exclusive mode<br>enable hidden mode | use P<br>emula<br>enabl<br>enabl<br>enabl<br>enabl | Ports class<br>ate baud ra<br>le buffer or<br>le plug-in n<br>le exclusiv<br>le hidden r | COM22<br>ate<br>verrun<br>node<br>e mode<br>mode                          |
|   | RX TX DTR DSR DCD RTS CTS RI CTS   |  |  | RX<br>TX<br>DTR<br>DSR<br>DCD<br>RTS<br>CTS<br>RI<br>OUT1<br>OUT2<br>OPEN |
| Add Pair Remove   | Reset  |  | Арј  | oly   |

## 7.4.2 Virtual audio – Voicemeeter Banana

This is based on the guide published by Scott WU2O:

- 1. Download Voicemeeter Banana and install it. You can click the **Install** link on this page: <u>https://www.vb-audio.com/Voicemeeter/banana.htm</u>
- 2. Restart your PC after installing that code.
- 3. Open the windows control panel, select <u>Hardware and Sound</u> then <u>Manage Audio Devices</u>
- 4. You should have 4 new audio devices present on the Playback and Recording tabs: Voicemeeter Input; Voicemeeter Aux Input; Voicemeeter Output; Voicemeeter Aux Output.
- Click on each in turn; select <u>Properties</u> then <u>Advanced</u>. Set <u>default format</u> to **16 bit**, **48000Hz** (DVD Quality) for the two inputs, and **2 channel**, **16 bit**, **48000Hz** (DVD Quality) for the two outputs.

| VoiceMeeter Aux Output Properties  | Х  |
|--|----|
| General Listen Levels Advanced   |    |
| Default Format<br>Select the sample rate and bit depth to be used when running in<br>shared mode.<br>2 channel, 16 bit, 48000 Hz (DVD Quality) |    |
| Exclusive Mode<br>Allow applications to take exclusive control of this device<br>Give exclusive mode applications priority                     |    |
| Give exclusive mode applications priority  |    |
|  |    |
| Restore Defaults   |    |
| OK Cancel ≜pp  | ly |

- 6. Start <u>Virtual AUX I/O Control Panel</u> from the **VB Audio** application menu tab.
- 7. Click Options and select Internal Sampling Rate: 48000 Hz



- 8. Start <u>Virtual I/O Control Panel</u> from the **VB Audio** application menu tab and do the same.
- 9. Start Voicemeeter Banana from the VB Audio application menu tab
- 10. Near the top right click <u>A1</u> and select an output audio device (eg your PC speakers)

#### 7.4.3 Setting up Virtual Audio in THETIS

THETIS needs to be set up to use the virtual COM and virtual audio connections.

- 17. Open <u>Menu > Setup > CAT Control</u>
- 18. In CAT Control select Port to COM21
- 19. Set serial parameters to baud  $\underline{9600}$  parity <u>none</u> data <u>8</u> stop <u>1</u>
- 20. Tick <u>Enable</u>

| CAT Control |       |        |
|-------------|-------|--------|
| 🗹 Enable    | CAT   |        |
| Port:       | COM21 | $\sim$ |
| Baud        | 9600  | $\sim$ |
| Parity      | none  | $\sim$ |
| Data        | 8     | $\sim$ |
| Stop        | 1     | $\sim$ |

- 21. Open <u>Menu > Setup > Audio > VAC1</u>
- 22. Tick Enable VAC1; Driver MME
- 23. Set TX and RX gains to OdB
- 24. Select Input: Voicemeeter Output
- 25. Select Output: Voicemeeter Input

| ieneral                          | Audio                             | Display                 | DSP                    | Transmit              | PA Settings  | Appearance  | e Keyboard                                     | CAT Control   | Tests  |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|--|---|--|---|--|
| VAC 1                            | VAC 2                             |                         |                        |                       |  |   |  |   |  |
| ⊡ Er<br>Virtua                   | iable VA<br>I Audio C             | C 1<br>Cable Setu       | p                      |                       | Buffer Siz   | ze  | Gain (dB)<br>RX: 0                             | Comb  | ine VAC<br>Channels                              |
| Drive                            | r: MN                             | IE                      |                        | ~                     | Sample F   | Rate  | TX: 0  | Direct I/   | Q.   |
| Input:<br>Outpu                  | Voi<br>ut: Voi                    | ceMeeter<br>ceMeeter    | Output ()<br>Input (VE | VB-Aud ~<br>B-Audio ~ | 48000  | ~   | Mono/Stereo                                    | Ou  | tput to VAC                                      |
| Auto I                           | Enable<br>Enable fo<br>or all oth | or Digital<br>ners      | modes, [               | Disable               | Allow VAC for Allow VAC for Allow VAC for overrice Allow VAC for a second control overrice Phone Bypas playbas | PTT to overri<br>or Phone<br>SPACE to<br>de/bypass VA<br>MOX to<br>de/bypass VA<br>s VAC for rec<br>ack | de/bypass<br>AC for Phone<br>AC for<br>cording | Buffer Laten<br>Ring<br>In: 120 🖨<br>Manual<br>Port | cy (ms)<br>gBuffer<br>Out: 120<br>Manua<br>Audio |
| TO V/<br>Overf<br>Under<br>Var R | AC:<br>Iows<br>flows<br>tatio     | 1109<br>379<br>1.000852 | Force                  | ÷                     | FROM VA<br>Overflows<br>Underflows<br>Var Ratio  | C:<br>364<br>290<br>1.001122  | Force  | In: 120 🜩   | Out: 120<br>Manua                                |

- 26. Select mode =  $\underline{\text{DIGU}}$  and tune to  $\underline{7.074\text{MHz}}$
- 27. Start THETIS. You should hear audio from the PC speakers it has been routed to Voicemeeter Banana and sent to the speakers from there. In the middle of its display you should see a bargraph indicating the audio level from THETIS:



THETIS is now ready to go. You can use digital mode programs to connect to the other end of the virtual links!

# 7.5 Interfacing to a Linear Amplifier

The manual for your radio will have important instructions on connecting an external linear amplifier to your radio.

## 7.5.1 Setting the Operating Band

Your linear will need to know which band is in use. If it provides a parallel hardwired connection it should be possible to use the 7 Open Collector outputs appropriately configured to indicate the band in a binary word. See section 6.1.6.

If your linear amplifier supports CAT commands, then it may be able to interrogate THETIS directly.

#### 7.5.2 Keying

Your linear will need a signal to control when it enters TX mode. Your radio will provided appropriate control outputs; follow the radio manual instructions.

#### 7.5.3 ALC

The recent HPSDR radios do <u>not</u> support an ALC signal from a linear amplifier. ALC is operated internally within THETIS and your radio, to ensure an optimum drive signal is generated. Thereafter it is your responsibility to set the **Drive** level so that your linear operates in its linear region.

#### 7.5.4 Puresignal

It is possible to use Puresignal to provide adaptive pre-distortion to the transmit signal through a linear amplifier in just the same way as when it linearises its own internal amplifier. It requires an RF

coupler after the linear amplifier so that a sample of the TX signal can be coupled back to the receiver. Consult your radio manual for details.

# 7.6 Software Maintenance

### 7.6.1 Installing Software Updates

Installing updates is simply the same process as a clean install. However at the end of the process, THETIS will not need to re-run the FFT tests. You will get a message saying that the database will be updated to a new version; let this run to completion, then re-run THETIS.

#### 7.6.2 Building THETIS from Source Code

It is possible to download the source code for THETIS [8], make proprietary changes then execute the code. To be able to do this, you will need to download Microsoft Visual Studio "Community Edition". Currently the correct version is the 2019 community version. You will need a Microsoft account for commercial use, but it is free for non-commercial use. Visual Studio can be downloaded from: <a href="https://visualstudio.microsoft.com/vs/">https://visualstudio.microsoft.com/vs/</a>

If you wish to make changes to THETIS that others can benefit from, you are recommended to contact Doug W5WC in the first instance.

# 7.7 CAT Control

Computer Aided Transceiver (CAT) commands were created to allow PCs to control radios. They allow most of the settings of a radio to be accessed using simple serial commands. Many different kinds of program use them, and many external devices are available (e.g. auto tuners) that use them.

THETIS supports CAT commands, and can have 4 connections open at any time. These are accessed through the Setup form, CAT Control tab (see section 6.9).

Establishing a connection is simple:

- 1. Connect an external device, if you have one.
- 2. If you are connecting to another program on the same PC, you will need a virtual COM port program (see section 7.4.1)
- 3. Choose the CAT connection on THETIS (THETIS has one CAT connection on the primary tab, and three more on the "CAT+" form. They are all the same).
- 4. Set the **port** to the port number of your device or VAC cable
- 5. Set the **baud** rate, **parity**, **data** and **stop** bits appropriately (there should be documentation for the product you are connecting to)
- 6. Click Enable
- 7. And that's it connection will be established.

The list of CAT commands used by THETIS and PowerSDR mrx ps can be downloaded from the TAPR HPSDR github repository [9]. That document explains the format of the commands.

Take care if your remote device includes an "Arduino" based processor: **NEVER** open the connection with the baud rate set to 1200. That will cause the device to erase its firmware, requiring it to be reprogrammed.

## 7.7.1 Connecting Hardwired Inputs

THETIS allows you to connect PTT switches and CW keys to COM put inputs of the PC. In both cases begin by getting a USB to serial converter. These general have a 9 pin D male connector; you will

need a 9 pin female connector to mate with it. Plug the converter into your PC; use windows control panel device manager to find out which COM part number has been assigned to it.

Note than when **DTR** is selected you should wire to pin 6 (DSR); when **RTS** is selected you should wire to pin 8 (CTS). In both cases the other end of the PTT or key switch goes to pin 7.

# 7.7.1.1 Connecting a PTT Switch

- 1. Connect your PTT between pin 7 and pin 6 on the 9 pin D female connector.
- 2. Plug the connector into your USB to Serial converter.
- 3. Select the <u>Menu > Setup > CAT Control</u> form.
- 4. In the PTT section:
  - a. Select the COM port for your converter in the **Port** box
  - b. Select **DTR**
  - c. Click **Enable PTT**. The controls get greyed out.
- 5. Now when you press your PTT switch, and the radio will be keyed to TX.

#### 7.7.1.2 Connecting a CW Key

- 1. Connect your key between pin 7 and pin 8 on the 9 pin D female connector.
- 2. Plug the connector into your USB to Serial converter.
- 3. Select the <u>Menu > Setup > DSP > CW</u> form.
- 4. In the Connections section:
  - a. Select **Primary** = <u>Radio</u>
  - b. Select Secondary = (your COM port)
  - c. Select **Key** = <u>RTS</u>
- 5. Select a CW mode eg CWL
- 6. Tick Semi Break-In
- 7. Now when you press your key, your radio will be keyed to TX.

## 7.8 Control Panel Operation

THETIS supports at least three ways to have a physical "front panel" with controls on it to operate your radio.

#### 7.8.1 Andromeda

Andromeda is a radio with an integral front panel with pushbuttons and rotary controls alongside a 7" touchscreen display. Its front panel is controlled by an Arduino module, and all commands and messages are exchanged using CAT commands.



Figure 1: A prototype of the Andromeda front panel

For a radio with an Andromeda panel, the panel should be connected via the "Andromeda" section of the CAT settings tab of the setup form: see section 6.9.1.

The function of the controls (encoders, indicators and pushbuttons) can be changed using the Andromeda settings editor form: see section 6.12.

#### 7.8.2 Odin

Odin is a "front panel" type accessory device designed by Laurence Barker G8NJJ and Kjell Karlsen LA2NI. It has rotary controls and pushbuttons, and a small touchscreen display which can access more settings. The design for Odin is in the public domain published on github [15].

Odin connects to THETIS or PowerSDR mrx ps using CAT commands. It allows tuning with a tuning action comparable to that of the FT1000 with no "lag" evident even when turned at high speeds. A prototype, fully working Odin is shown below.



To connect Odin:

- 1. Open the <u>Menu > Setup > CAT control</u> form
- 2. In the CAT control area, click the Port combo box and select the correct com port
- 3. Set Baud = 9600, Parity=none, Data=8, Stop=1
- 4. (Do NOT select baud rate = 1200)
- 5. Click Enable CAT
- 6. And Odin will now be working. Its display will change to something similar to that above and the controls will operate.

You can even have two Odins – one for each receiver, if you have a dual receiver system. Set one to operate VFO A and the other to operate VFO B and each can, quite separately, operate its channel. To connect a second Odin, use the <u>Menu > Setup > CAT Control > CAT+</u> form.

#### 7.8.3 Midi

This guide has been provided by Bill Diaz, KC9XG.

The THETIS Midi2Cat interface supports Hercules and Behringer Midi controllers connected to USB ports. YMMV on other Controller implementations.

Midi defines controls as Wheels, Knobs/Sliders and Buttons. Wheels are generally high resolution devices, while knobs and sliders are limited to 0-127. The Midi protocol identifies the Control ID, control type (wheel, knob/slider, button), and control value.

The diagrams below show two example controllers: red numbers indicate the control ID.



Figure 2: Hercules DJControl Compact



Figure 3: Behringer CMD Studio 2a

| JCon  | trol Com | pact          |                |   |     |     |                          |   |             |               |
|-------|----------|---------------|----------------|---|-----|-----|--------------------------|---|-------------|---------------|
| /lana | ge Map   | pings 👻       |                |   |     |     |                          |   | Ν           | lot Save      |
| Марр  | ed Contr | rols Commands | Diagnostics    |   |     |     |                          |   |             |               |
|       | ld       | Control Name  | Control Type   |   | Min | Max | Cat Cmd                  |   | Edit        | Delete        |
| •     | 1        | Split         | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Split On Off             | • | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 2        | Sync          | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Vfo Sync On Off          | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 3        | Mox           | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | MOX On Off               | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 4        | Tune          | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Tune On Off              | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 33       | SwapRx        | Button         | Ŧ | 0   | 127 | Vfo Swap                 | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 34       | A2B           | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | VfoA To B                | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 35       | StepUp        | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Tuning Step Up           | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 45       | NR            | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Noise Reduction 2 On Off | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 48       | VFOA          | Wheel          | • | 1   | 127 | Change Freq Vfo A        | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 49       | VFOB          | Wheel          | • | 1   | 127 | Change Freq Vfo B        | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 54       | AFGain        | Knob or Slider | • | 1   | 127 | AF Gain                  | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 57       | Drive         | Knob or Slider | • | 0   | 127 | DriveLevel               | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 60       | MicGain       | Knob or Slider | • | 0   | 127 | MicGain                  | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 64       | AGC           | Knob or Slider | • | 0   | 127 | RX1 AGC Level            | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 82       | B2A           | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | VfoB To A                | - | <u>Edit</u> | <u>Delete</u> |
|       | 83       | StepDn        | Button         | • | 0   | 127 | Tuning Step Down         | - | Edit        | Delete        |

PowerSDR/Thetis provides a somewhat user friendly Midi User Interface Controller which can only be accessed when a midi controller is plugged in. It is accessed from the <u>Menu > Setup > CAT</u> <u>Control</u> form. Here is a possible setup for the Hercules DJ Compact shown above:

The Midi User Interface Controller pops up a dialog when you activate a control (move Wheel, Knob/Slider, press button). You can enter a control name and select a control type. A list of commands available for that control is then provided. You need to rotate wheels, knobs/Sliders to that the values shown at the top are min and max values.

| Control ID: 54   | Value: 68      | Max Value: 127 | Min Value: 1     |
|--|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| Control Name:  | AFGain         |                |                  |
| Control Type:  | Knob or Slider | ✓ AF Gain      |                  |
| Available Comm<br>Not Mapped<br>RIT<br>XIT<br>Filter Shift<br>Volume VfoA<br>Volume VfoB<br>Ratio Main Sub<br>PreAmp Setting<br>CW Speed<br>AF Gain<br>DXLevel<br>VOXGain<br>DEXP Threshold<br>Squelch<br>RX2 AGC Level<br>TX AF Monitor<br>AGC Mode<br>Zoom | nands<br>Rx    | Show           | Advanced Options |
| Done   |                |                | Back             |

Press the **Done** button to save selections.

There is a diagnostic screen that helps identify controls and values:

| Contro                | Compact                            |                    |                       |                  |                     |   |      |        |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------|---------------------|---|------|--------|
| JContro               | bi Compact                         |                    |                       |                  |                     |   |      |        |
| Manag                 | e Mappings 👻                       |                    |                       |                  |                     |   | No   | t Save |
| Mappeo                | d Controls Comma                   | ands Diagno        | stics                 |                  |                     |   |      |        |
| ∕lidi O               | ut Status: Open                    |                    |                       |                  |                     |   |      |        |
| The h                 | ave not been any e                 | errors             |                       |                  |                     |   |      |        |
| The h                 | ave not been any e                 | rrors              |                       |                  |                     |   |      |        |
| The h                 | ave not been any e<br>Controller # | status             | Control #             | Data             | Channel             | Event                                     | <br> |        |
| The h                 | Controller #                       | Status<br>B0       | Control #             | Data<br>01       | Channel<br>01       | Event<br>Control Change                   | <br> |        |
| The hi<br>#<br>0<br>1 | Controller # 00 00                 | Status<br>B0<br>B0 | Control #<br>30<br>30 | Data<br>01<br>01 | Channel<br>01<br>01 | Event<br>Control Change<br>Control Change | <br> |        |

It is easier to experiment and get started with this than it is to describe!

# 7.9 Hardwired Inputs

(This material has been provided by Bill Diaz, KC9XG)

Most HPSDR radios have a number of rear panel I/O signals that can be used to control your radio. The diagrams below give an overview.



Figure 4: ANAN10/E, 100, 100B, 100D, 200D Accessory Interfacing



Figure 5: ANAN 7000DLE, 8000DLE Accessory Interfacing

# 8 References

- [1] Open HPSDR Project Website: <u>http://openhpsdr.org/</u>
- [2] Original PowerSDR manual: <u>https://www.flexradio.com/downloads/flex-3000-owners-manual/#</u>
- [3] W1AEX skins http://www.w1aex.com/hpsdr/hpsdr.html
- [4] WDSP Guide: <u>https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-wdsp</u>
- [5] Protocol 3 documentation: <u>https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-</u> <u>Firmware/tree/master/Protocol%202/Documentation</u>
- [6] WDSP Documentation: <u>https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-wdsp</u>
- [7] Thetis releases https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-Thetis/releases
- [8] Thetis source code repository: <u>https://github.com/w5wc/Thetis</u>
- [9] Thetis And PowerSDR<sup>™</sup> 3.x CAT Command Reference Guide: <u>https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-</u> <u>PowerSDR/blob/master/Documentation/Radio/PowerSDR-CAT-Command-Reference-Guide-<u>V3.docx</u>
  </u>
- [10]PowerSDR mrx ps release: https://github.com/TAPR/OpenHPSDR-PowerSDR
- [11]SDR Console website: https://www.sdr-radio.com/
- [12]LinHPSDR: <u>https://github.com/g0orx/linhpsdr</u>
- [13]Pihpsdr: https://github.com/g0orx/pihpsdr
- [14]WDSP port to Linux: <a href="https://github.com/g0orx/wdsp">https://github.com/g0orx/wdsp</a>
- [15]Odin can be found at: <u>https://github.com/laurencebarker/odin-SDR-console</u>
- [16] "Controlled Envelope Single Sideband" by David L. Hershberger, W9GR, QEX, issue Nov./Dec.
   2014, pp. 3–13. Download <u>here</u>.

# 9 Revision Notes

- 1.0 Initial Release
- 1.1 Added protocol 1 references